



eScan Elite for Business User Guide

Product Version: 22.0.0000.xxxx Document Version: 22.0.0000.xxxx

24x7 FREE Online Technical Support

support@escanav.com https://forums.escanav.com

An ISO 27001 Certified Company

www.escanav.com





Copyright © 2021 by MicroWorld Software Services Private Limited. All rights reserved.

Any technical documentation provided by MicroWorld is copyrighted and owned by MicroWorld. Although MicroWorld makes every effort to ensure that this information is accurate, MicroWorld will not be liable for any errors or omission of facts contained herein. This user guide may include typographical errors, technical or other inaccuracies.

MicroWorld does not offer any warranty to this user guide's accuracy or use. Any use of the user guide or the information contained therein is at the risk of the user. MicroWorld reserves the right to make changes without any prior notice. No part of this user guide may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of MicroWorld Software Services Private Limited.

The terms MicroWorld, MicroWorld Logo, eScan, eScan Logo, MWL, and MailScan are trademarks of MicroWorld. Microsoft, MSN, Windows, and Windows Vista are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies. All other product names referenced in this user guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies and are hereby acknowledged. MicroWorld disclaims proprietary interest in the marks and names of others.

The software described in this user guide is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement.

Document Number:	5BUG/10.08.2021/22.x
Current Software Version:	22.0.0000.xxxx
Technical Support:	<u>support@escanav.com</u>
Sales:	<u>sales@escanav.com</u>
Forums:	http://forums.escanav.com
eScan Wiki:	https://wiki.escanav.com/wiki/index.php/
Live Chat:	http://www.escanav.com/english/livechat.asp
Printed by:	MicroWorld Software Services Private Limited
Date:	August, 2021





Content

Introduction	9
Pre-requisites for eScan Elite for Business	9
System Requirements	
Installing eScan Elite for Business	
Installation	
Components of eScan Server	
Web Console Login	21
Setup Links	
eScan AV Report	
Filtering AV Report	
Main Interface	
Setup Wizard	
Navigation Panel	
Dashboard	
Deployment Status	
eScan Status	
License	
eScan Version	
Protection Status	
Update Status	
Scan Status	
File Anti-Virus	41
Proactive	41
Mail Anti-Virus	
Anti-Spam	
Web Anti-Phishing	
Mail Anti–Phishing	
Web Protection	
Firewall	
Endpoint Security	
Privacy	
Anti – Ransomware	
Protection Statistics	
File Anti-Virus	
Mail Anti-Virus	
Anti-Spam	
Web Protection	
Endpoint Security-USB	
Endpoint Security-Application	
Summary Top 10	
Asset Changes	
Live Status	
Configure the Dashboard Display	





Managed Computers	57
Search	
Update Agent	59
Adding an Update Agent	59
Configuring UA Settings	61
Delete an Update Agent	61
Action List	63
Creating a Group	63
Removing a Group	64
Set Group Configuration	64
Managing Installations	65
Deploy/Upgrade Client	67
Manual installation of eScan Client on network computer(s)	69
Installing eScan Client Using Agent	69
Installing other Software (Third Party Software)	
Uninstall eScan Client (Windows)	71
Synchronize with Active Directory	73
Outbreak Prevention	74
Create Client Setup	77
Properties of a group	
Group Tasks	
Creating a Group Task	79
Managing a Group Task	
Assigning a Policy to the group	
Client Action List	
Set Host Configuration	
Deploy/Upgrade Client	
Uninstall eScan Client	
Move to Group	
Remove from Group	
Refresh Client	
Connect to Client (RMM)	
Manage Add-On License	
Assign Policy Template	
Show Critical Events	90
Export	
Show Installed Softwares	91
Force Download	
Forensic-Port/Communication	
On Demand Scanning	
Send Message	94
Outbreak Prevention	
Delete All Quarantine Files	95
Create OTP	95
Pause Protection	97
Resume Protection	





Properties of Selected Computer	
Anti-Theft	
Anti-Theft Options	
Disable Anti-Theft	
Refresh Client	
Understanding the eScan Client Protection Status	
Select Columns	
Policy Template	
Managing Policies	
Creating Policy Template for a group/specific computer	
Configuring eScan Policies for Windows Computers	
Assigning Policy Template to a group	
Assigning Policy Template to Computer(s)	
Copy a Policy Template	
Exporting a Policy Template report	
Parent Policy	
Policy Criteria Templates	
Adding a Policy Criteria Template (AND condition)	
Adding a Policy Criteria Template (OR condition)	
Viewing Properties of a Policy Criteria template	
Deleting a Policy Criteria template	
Unmanaged Computers	
Network Computers	
Creating a New Group from the Select Group window	
IP Range	
Adding New IP Range	
Moving an IP Range to a Group	
Deleting an IP Range	
Active Directory	
Adding an Active Directory	
Moving Computers from an Active Directory	
New Computers Found	
Filter Criteria	
Action List	
Report Templates	
Creating a Report Template	
Creating Schedule for a Report Template	
Viewing Properties of a Report Template	
Deleting a Report Template	
Report Scheduler	
Creating a Schedule	
Viewing Reports on Demand	
Managing Existing Schedules	
Generating Task Report of a Schedule	
Viewing Results of a Schedule	
Viewing Properties of a Schedule	





Deleting a Schedule	
Events and Computers	
Events Status	
Computer Selection	
Edit Selection	
Software/Hardware Changes	
Violations	
Settings	
Event Status Setting	
Computer Selection	
Software/ Hardware Changes Setting	
Performing an action for computer	
Tasks for Specific Computers	
Creating a task for specific computers	
Viewing Properties of a task	
Viewing Results of a task	
Deleting a task for specific computers	
Asset Management	
Hardware Report	
Filtering Hardware Report	
Exporting Hardware Report	
Software Report	
Filtering Software Report	
Exporting Software Report	
Software License	
Filtering Software License Report	
Exporting Software License Report	
Software Report (Microsoft)	
Filtering Software Report (Microsoft)	
Exporting Software Report (Microsoft)	
Filtering Microsoft OS Report	241
Exporting Microsoft OS Report	
User Activity	
Print Activity	
Viewing Print Activity Log	
Exporting Print Activity Log	
Filtering Print Activity Log	
Exporting Print Activity Report	
Print Activity Settings	
Session Activity Report	
Viewing Session Activity Log	
Filtering Session Activity Log	
Exporting Session Activity Report	247
File Activity Report	
Viewing File Activity Log	
Filtering File Activity Log	





Exporting File activity Report	249
Application Access Report	250
Viewing Application Access Report	250
Filtering Application Access Report	251
Exporting Application Access Report	251
Patch Report	252
Patch Report	252
Filtering Patch Report	252
Exporting Windows Patch Report	253
All Patch Report	254
Filtering All Patch Report	254
Exporting All Patch Report	254
Notifications	256
Outbreak Alert	256
Event Alert	258
Unlicensed Move Alert	260
New Computer Alert	261
Configure SIEM	262
SMTP Settings	263
Settings	264
EMC Settings	265
Web Console Settings	267
Update Settings	270
General Config	270
Update Notification	271
Scheduling	272
Update Distribution	273
Auto-Grouping	275
Excluding clients from auto adding under Managed Group(s)	276
Removing clients from the excluded list	
Defining a group and client selection criteria for auto adding under managed computer(s)	276
Two-Factor Authentication (2FA)	278
Enabling 2FA login	279
Disabling 2FA login	280
Users For 2FA	281
Administration	283
User Accounts	283
Create New Account	283
Delete a User Account	284
User Roles	285
New Role	285
View Role Properties	286
Delete a User Role	288
Export & Import	289
Export Settings	289
Import Settings	290





Scheduling	
Customize Setup	
Creating a customized setup for Windows	
Editing Setup Properties	
Deleting a Setup	
Audit Trail	
Filter all Audit Trail report	
Exporting Audit Trail	
License	
Adding and Activating a License	
Moving Licensed Computers to Non-Licensed Computers	
Moving Non-Licensed Computers to Licensed Computers	
Getting Started	
Graphical User Interface (GUI)	
Data Encryption	
How to Create a Vault?	
Two-Factor Authentication	
Enabling 2FA login	
Disabling 2FA login	
Identity protection	
Configuration	
Quick Access Links	
Rescue Mode	
eScan Remote Support	
Password	
License Information	
Tools	
Reports	
Contact Us	
Forums	
Chat Support	
Email Support	





Introduction

eScan Elite for Business protects the business network from different types of cyber security threats such as malware, ransomware, adware, bots, and more, using layered approach. With unique combination of basic and modern techniques, eScan blocks broad range of attacks. It offers various advance features like web filtering, signature-based malware detection, application control, and behavior analysis. It includes innovative techniques like malware detection, exploit prevention, heuristic scan, and many more. Packed with the sophisticated threat-detection and machine-learning virus protection that won't affect the system.

eScan offers advanced defence capabilities against malwares that includes script, macro and polymorphic viruses, Trojans, Internet worms, malicious Java applets, and ActiveX codes. It provides smart parental controls to keep the kids safe online by limiting the time and content filtering wherever they go. Along with all these, eScan Elite for Business equipped with a rescue disk, vulnerability scan, and several other tools designed to clean and optimize the PC.

Pre-requisites for eScan Elite for Business

Before installing eScan ensure that the following pre-requisites are met:

- Access to system as an administrator.
- Uninstall the existing anti-virus software, if any.
- Check for free space on the hard disk/partition for installing eScan.
- Static IP address for eScan server.
- IP address of the mail server to which warning messages will be sent (optional).

If authentication for the mail server is mandatory for accepting emails, you will need a **NOTE** username and password to send emails.





System Requirements

Windows Server and Endpoints:

Hardware Requirements for eScan Server:

- **CPU** 2GHz IntelTM CoreTM Duo processor or equivalent
- **Memory** 4 GB and above
- **Disk Space** (Free) 8 GB and above

Hardware Requirements for eScan Client:

- CPU 1.4 GHz minimum (2.0 GHz recommended) Intel Pentium or equivalent
- **Memory** 1.0 GB and above
- **Disk Space** (Free) 1 GB and above

eScan Management Console can be accessed by using following browsers:

- Internet Explorer 11 and above
- Firefox latest version
- Google Chrome latest version





Installing eScan Elite for Business

• Installing eScan Elite for Business from CD/DVD

Installing eScan Elite for Business from the CD/DVD is very simple, insert the CD/DVD in the ROM and wait few seconds for the Autorun to run the installation wizard. In case the installation wizard does not run automatically, locate and double-click on **WMXXXX.exe** file on CD-ROM. This will run the installation wizard based setup of eScan Elite for Business. To complete the installation, follow the instructions on screen.

• **Downloading and installing eScan Elite for Business from internet** To download the setup file click <u>here</u>. To install eScan Server from the downloaded file, double click on **WMCTOTxxxx.exe** file and follow the instructions on screen to complete the installation process.

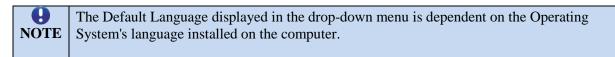
Installation

To install the eScan Elite for Business, follow the steps given below:

1. The installation wizard displays following window:



- 2. Click the drop-down and select a desired language for installation.
- 3. Click OK.



The installation wizard welcomes you.





or DIGITAL WORLD	Welcome to the eScan elite for Business Setup Wizard Welcome to the eScan elite for Business Setup Wizard Click Next to continue, or Cancel to exit Setup.	
eScan www.escanav.com	eScan elite for Business	3

4. To proceed, click **Next**. **License Agreement** screen appears.

Choice of Digital World	License Agreement Please read the following important information before continuing. Please read the following License Agreement. You must accept the terms of this agreement before continuing with the installation.	
	Image: space spac	
eSoan www.escanav.com	 ○ I accept the agreement ● I go not accept the agreement ● Scan elite for Business < Back Next > Cancer 	al

5. Please read the License Agreement completely. To proceed with the installation, select the option **I accept the agreement**.

6. Click **Next**.

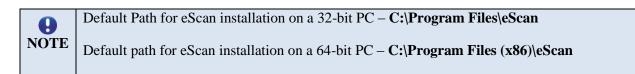
The Select Destination Location screen appears.





m î		- 8
T Choice of DIGITAL WORLD	Select Destination Location Where should eScan elite for Business be installed?	
	Setup will install eScan elite for Business into the following folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.	
	C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan	
	At least 1,408.4 MB of free disk space is required.	
eScan www.escanav.com	eScan elite for Business Cance	al D

7. Click **Next** to proceed with the installation. If you want to select a different installation location, click **Browse** and select the destination folder for installation.



The Ready to Install screen appears displaying destination location.





	Ready to Install Setup is now ready to begin installing eScan elite for Business on your computer. Click Install to continue with the installation, or click Back if you want to review or change any settings. Destination location: C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan	
eScan www.escanav.com	eScan elite for Business Cance	4

8. To proceed, click **Install**.

The installation wizard initiates the installation and displays the process.

Choise of Digital World	
	Extracting files C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan\SETUPTMP\eserv.exe
eScan www.escanav.com	eScan elite for Business

After installation, the wizard asks you to configure the settings for SQL Server hosting and Login settings for the eScan Management console.





#1	Welcome to the eScan Management Console Configuration Wizard
eScan	This installation wizard will guide you through the steps required to install and/or configure Microsoft SQL Server Express for eScan Management Console application on your computer. Note: Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Click "Next" to continue.

- 9. To proceed, click **Next**. The configuration wizard requests you to select following SQL version to install:
 - SQL 2008 R2 Express Edition

Select this option to install SQL version 2008 R2 - Express Edition.

Select SQL Vers	ion to Install :			
) SQL 200	8 R2 - Express Ed	ition		
ODownloa	d and Install SQL :	2019 - Express <mark>Ed</mark> it	ion	

• **Download and Install SQL 2019 - Express Edition** To download and install SQL version 2019 – Express Edition, select this option and click on **Download**.





Select SQL Ve	rsion to Install :			
○ SQL 20	08 R2 - Express	s Edition		
) Downlo	ad and Install S	QL 2019 - Expr	ess Edition	

The download process will begin as shown in the below window:

Select SQL Version	n to Install :		
) SQL 2008 F	2 - Express Edition		
Download a	ind Install SQL 2019 - Exp	ress Edition	
			100%
File Download	ded Successfully		

10. After file gets downloaded, click on Install.

The configuration wizard will begin installation process of the Microsoft SQL Server Express.





wizard will install following prerequisites along with Microsoft SQL er Express:
Microsoft Windows Installer
Microsoft .Net Framework
Microsoft SQL Server Express Edition
Click "Install" to proceed

11. To proceed, click **Install**.

Choose Directory For Extracted Files window appears

Choose Directory	For Extracted File	es 2
Choose Directory	For Extracted Files	EALPHRIN JALIFISM
Ok	Cancel	Browse

12. Select the destination folder and click **Ok**.

The SQL will be installed as confirmed by below window:

θ	Default Path for eScan installation on a 32-bit PC – C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server
NOTE	Default path for eScan installation on a 64-bit PC – C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server





Instal	ling Microsoft SQL Server Express
Micro syste	soft SQL Server Express has been installed successfully on your m.
~	Microsoft Windows Installer
~	Microsoft .Net Framework
~	Microsoft SQL Server Express Edition
	Click "Next" to continue

13. To proceed, click Next.

The wizard requests you to enter the login credentials for the root user.

Second Second	Nanagement Console Configuration Wizard
Second 1	nanagement console configuration mizard
eScan Manager	nent Console login information
Enter the login cred eScan Managemen	entials for the root user to give permission to manage the t Console.
User name:	root
Description:	Administrator account created during installation
Email address:*	
Password:*	
Confirm Password	-#
Despword	field should not be empty.
Password	Click "Next" to continue

14. After filling all the details, click **Next**. The installation successful window appears.





#1	eScan Management Console Configuration Wizard Completed.
WORLD	You have successfully installed / configured Microsoft SQL Server Express on your computer. Click "Finish" to proceed with eScan installation.
eSoan www.escanav.com	

15. Click **Finish** to exit the installation wizard and proceed further. The wizard displays below window:

Choice of Digital World	Completing the eScan elite for Business Setup Wizard To complete the installation of eScan elite for Business, Setup must restart your computer. Would you like to restart now?	- 2
	$\textcircled{\sc original}$ Yes, restart the computer now \bigcirc No, I will restart the computer later	
		<i>⊾</i>
	eScan elite for Business	Einish

16. Click **Finish** to restart the PC for completing the installation process. After the computer restarts, launch the eScan Elite for Business and enter the license key for

O NOTE

activation.

To run eScan services fully it is recommended that you restart the PC.





Components of eScan Server

The eScan Server is comprised of following components:

eScan Server

This is the core component that lets you manage, deploy and configure eScan client on computers. It stores the configuration information and log files about the computers connected across the network. Being the core component, it communicates with the following components.

• Agent It manages the connection between the eScan server and the client computers.

user will have to uninstall these components manually.

• eScan Management Console

It is a Web-based application hosted on the eScan Server. With this application, administrators can manage and configure eScan on computers in the network.

• Microsoft SQL Server Express Edition

It is a database for storing events and logs already included in the eScan Setup file.

• Apache

It is an open source, cross-platform web server software essential for running eScan Management Console. It's included in the eScan Setup file.

For Windows 11 / 10 / 8 / 8.1 / 2008 / 2012 / 2016 / 2019 operating systems, the SQL 2008 Express edition will be installed. For Windows 7 and below, SQL 2005 Express edition will be installed. Uninstallation of eScan server won't remove SQL and APACHE from the endpoint. The

An ISO 27001 Certified Company





Web Console Login

The web console login page can be accessed via two methods.

To log in to the eScan Management Console, follow the steps given below:

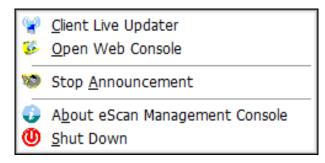
- 1. Launch a web browser.
- 2. Enter the following URL: **<IP address of the eScan Server installed system>:10443** Web console login page appears.

	elite for Business - Management Consol	
Aller	elite for Business - Management Consol	
	Sign in	ner al
	Username	
	Password	
	Login	~
	eScan AV Report Setup Links	

- 3. Enter the login credentials defined during installation.
- 4. Click **Login**.

The second method to go to login page is as follows:

1. In the taskbar, right-click the eScan Management Console icon. A list of options appears.



2. Click Open Web Console.

Default browser launches and displays web console login page.





Rests of the options are explained below:

Client Live Updater

Clicking this option displays live event feeds from all computers on your network. This feed consists of IP Address, Username of the computers, Module Names and Client actions. This Live Feed list can be exported to Excel if required.

-					CI	ent Live U	pdate
Date	Time	Machine Na	IP Address	User Name	Event ID	Module Name	Descri
30 Jul 2021	12:22:26	WHW SISPER.	1132 168 0.41	WING SIGPRO	File Anti	[C] eScan M	Windo
30 Jul 2021	12:22:26	WING SIGPTE	19211088-047	WING SIGPRE	File Anti	[C] eScan M	C:\Pro
30 Jul 2021	12:22:27	WING SIGPTE	19211088-047	WING SIGPRI	File Anti	[C] eScan M	Admini
30 Jul 2021	12:22:28	WHITE SEEPING	1112 1148 (0.47)	WING SIGPRE	File Anti	[C] eScan M	REMO
30 Jul 2021	12:22:29	WHILE SEPTEM	1112 1148 (1.47)	WING STREET	File Anti	[C] WinEvent	A logo
30 Jul 2021 👘	12:22:30	WHEN SIGHTED	1112 1148 (1.47)	WING STREET	File Anti	[C] WinEvent	Remot
30 Jul 2021	12:22:32	WHITE SEEPING	1152 1148 (0.47)	WING SIGPRE	File Anti	[C] eScan M	REMO
30 Jul 2021	12:22:36	WHILE SEEPING	1152 1148 (2.47)	WING SIGPTE	File Anti	[C] eScan M	REMO
30 Jul 2021	12:32:03	751130343305		Classica Nine	File Anti	Android	Policy
30 Jul 2021	12:32:03	751130343305		Classica: Nine	File Anti	Config(Andr	Auto s
30 Jul 2021	12:32:03	751130343305		Canvice Nine	File Anti	Anti-Theft (A	Anti-Ti
30 Jul 2021	12:32:03	77511381446,2075		Chevistre Nine	File Anti	Web and A	Web C
30 Jul 2021	12:32:03	77571381046,2075		Chevistre Name	File Anti	Web and A	Applic
30 Jul 2021	12:32:04	7511360462075		Clevice Nex.	File Anti	Config(Andr	Protec 3
30 Jul 2021	12:32:04	751130346207		Chevillan Nime	File Anti	Call & SMS	Call/SI-
30 Jul 2021	12:32:04	7513664,205		Chevillae Nies	File Anti	Android	Compli
30 Jul 2021	13:32:09	7513664205		Chevillie Name	File Anti	Android	Policy
•							*

Stop Announcement

Clicking this option stops broadcast from and towards the server.

About eScan Management Console

Clicking this option displays Server Up Time and general information.

Shut Down

Clicking this option shuts down the eScan Management console.

P NOTE	It is recommended that you do not shut down the server, as doing so will stop the communications between client and server.
NOIE	The "root" is the Superuser account created by eScan during Installation.





Setup Links

The web console login page displays Setup Links options that let you to download client and agent setup files.

<	
eScan Client Setup (Windows)	\sim
eScan Agent Setup (Windows)	\sim

• eScan Client Setup (Windows)

This link can be shared via email to the computer users where remote installation is impossible. By clicking this link users can download the eScan Client Setup and install it manually on their computers. Users can also directly access the eScan Management console from their desktop.

• eScan Agent Setup (Windows)

This link can be shared via email to the computer users where remote installation is impossible. By clicking this link users can download the eScan Agent Setup and install it manually on their computers. Users can also directly access the eScan Management console from their desktop.





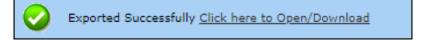
eScan AV Report

Clicking this link redirects you to the eScan AV Report webpage that displays Anti-Virus report for eScan installed computers.

1. Select a group and then click **Get Details** to get the details of the endpoints.

	eScan A	V Report			\$	Refresh	김 Helj
Filter Criteria							
Select Group		Installation Sta	atus				
😟 🗹 🚞 Managed Computers		All Last Updated All Last Scanned All	• •				
Get Details Reset Export Total Machines Installed Machines Last Updated Compliant	5 5 4	Search Not Installed Machines Last Updated Non Com	oliant				0
Last Scanned Compliant	2	Last Scanned Non Com					3
		1 - 5 of 5	i k∢page 1 of	1) ⊧ ⊨ Rows p	per page: 🗌	10 🗸
Machine Name Group	Last Connection	Offline Since	Installation Status	eScan Version	<u>Last Update</u>	Last Scan	ned La
Managed Computers	6/24/2021 3:26:20 PM	Offline more than 0 days	Installed	7.4.9	2021/06/24 08:49		83
#BCHN_CLIDHT Managed Computers Builden _ 12	6/23/2021 5:40:54 PM	Offline more than 0 days	Installed	14.0.1400.2300	2021/06/14 15:43	06/23/202	1 85
Builden Stage Managed Computers	6/24/2021 3:39:00 PM	Offline more than 0 days	Installed	34.0.3400.2285	2021/06/24 11:19		#3
Ministration Managed Computers	6/24/2021 12:19:07 PM	Offline more than 0 days	Installed	14.0.1400.2281	2021/06/24 11:19		
Managed Computers of Annual	6/24/2021 3:26:36 PM	Offline more than 0 days	Installed	94.0.3490.2281	2021/06/24 11:19	06/23/202	1 0#

2. Select a group and then click **Get Details** > **Export**. A detailed .xls report will be downloaded to computer.







Filtering AV Report

To filter AV report as per requirement,

Installation Status

It shows the report of eScan product installed on the client computer.

Last Update

It shows number of client computer have updated the eScan software.

Last Scanned

It display the list of computer have scanned.

The **Search** feature lets you find any computer added in Managed Computers. Click **Reset**, to clear all search fields.





Main Interface

Upon first login, console displays Setup Wizard that familiarizes you with the basic procedures.



The links in the top right corner are explained below:

About eScan 🗈

Clicking About eScan opens MircoWorld's homepage in a new tab.

Username ወ

Clicking **Username** lets you edit User Login details like Full name, Password and email address that you use to login in the eScan Management Console.

9 It is not allowed to configure your email address. Note 👔 Help Edit User Enable this account Account Type and Information **Custom Account** User's name: Full Name*: matrator account created duri New • Password: Confirm • Password: Email press .com Address: For Example: user@yourcompany.com Account Role Administrator \sim Role* Close Save (*) Mandatory Fields

Log off 🕒

Clicking Log off logs you out of the eScan Management Console.

Date of Virus Signatures

This link displays the last date on which the Virus signatures were updated. Click it to update virus signatures.

Refresh 🝣

Clicking **Refresh** let you refresh the eScan Management Console.

Help 🔳

This link displays the detailed information of eScan Management Console modules.





Setup Wizard

The Setup Wizard helps you to quick start with the eScan Management Console, by allowing admin to perform basic functions such as creating groups, adding computers to it, and installing eScan on it. It is recommended that you follow the steps displayed, before proceeding to the other modules.

Setup Wizard	👔 Help
Welcome to the Setup Wizard	
This Wizard helps to create Groups, select computers for respective Groups and installation of eScan on selected Groups.	
Click "Next" to Proceed.	

 In the Setup Wizard screen, click Next >. Create Group to Manage Computers window appears.

Setup Wizard	🝸 Help
Create Group to Manage Computers.	
🗄 🛅 Managed Computers	
New G	roup
Click "Next" to Proceed.	
< Back Next >	

2. To create a new group, select a group (Managed Computers) and click New Group.





Creating New Group popup appears.

Creating New Group	🝸 Help
Create New Group	
Ok Cancel	

- 3. Enter the name of the group and click **OK**.
- 4. After creating group, click **Next>** to add computers to the respective group. Add IP/Host to respective Groups window appears.

Setup Wizard	Help
Create Group to Manage Computers.	
Imaged Computers Imaged Computers	
New Group	
Click "Next" to Proceed.	





After creating a group, you can add computers to the group via following methods:

- IP Address/Host name
- Host from Network Computers

Setup Wizard	👔 Help
Add IP/Host to respective Groups.	
Add IP/Host in Add Host from Network Computers	
🖻 🛅 Managed Computers	
Roaming Users	
E Linux / Mac	
Samples_Team	
Click "Next" to Proceed.	
< Back Next >	

Adding computers via IP Address/Host Name

To add the computers through IP Address, follow the below steps:

1. Select the group and click **Add IP Address/Host Name**. Add Computers window appears.

Add Computers	🝸 Help
A	Add
	Add IP Address Range
	Remove
Ok Cancel	<i>»</i>

2. Click Add.





Select Computers popup appears.

Select Computer	🝸 Help
Ok Cancel	

3. Enter the **IP Address/Host name** and click **OK**. The computer will be added.

OR

4. To add an IP range, click **Add IP Address Range**. Add Computers By IP Range popup appears.

Add Computer By IP Range		🝸 Help
Starting IP Address*:		
Ending IP Address*:	· · · · · · ·	
Ok Cancel	(*) Mar	datory Fields

- 5. Enter the **Start** and **End IP Address**.
- 6. Click Ok.

The computers will be added in the group.





Adding Host Name from Network Computers

To add the computers from network, follow the below steps:

- 1. Select the group and click Add Host from Network Computers.
 - Add Host from Network Computers window appears.

Add Host from Network Computers	<u>?</u> Help
🗄 🗌 🎪 Network Computers	
🗄 🗆 🎪 Microsoft Windows Network	
🛄 🗌 🦣 Web Client Network	
Ok Cancel	

2. Select the network computers and click **Ok**. The computers will be added to the group.

IP/Host to respective Groups.		H 1
Add IP/Host 🛐 Add Host from N	etwork Computers	
🖻 🧰 Managed Computers		A
···· 💶 WIHEEE		
··· 📫 Wileidade		
WING MIL		
÷. 📄 Roaming Lians		
÷. 🔁 PLastin (tast month)		
OA		-





3. After adding IP address and Client/Network computer in group, click Next.

Setup Wizard	<u>?</u> Help
Select Groups for Installation/Deployment.	
🗄 🗌 🦲 Managed Computers	
···· 🖶 W 14 a da catina (a territoria)	
💭 🛅 Roaming likes	
🗄 ·· 🗋 Lin ···· // Mae	
Click "Next" to Proceed.	
< Back Next >	

4. Select the group having client computers then click **Next.** Client Configuration window appears.

Setup Wizard	김 Help
Client Configuration.	
Auto Reboot after Install Show Progress on Client (Only for XP/2000) Install Without Firewall Disable auto downloading of Windows patches by eScan Installation Path CDefault>	
Note: Computers with same or newer version of eScan will not be affected.	
Click "Next" to proceed with Installation/Deployment < Back Next >	

- To define a different installation path, click Add. (Skip this step if default path chosen).
 Click Next.
- A window displays File transfer progress.

After Installation, the eScan status will be updated in Managed Computers list.





Navigation Panel

888	DashBoard	
ż.	Setup Wizard	
副	Managed Computers	
Ģ	Unmanaged Computers	~
	Report Templates	
	Report Scheduler	
E	Events & Computers	
0	Tasks For Specific Compute	rs
۲	Asset Management	
₽Ē	User Activity	~
88	Patch Report	
((_))	Notifications	~
₿	Settings	~
2	Administration	*
٩	License	
	eScan elite for Business	





Dashboard

The Dashboard module displays charts showing Deployment status, Protection status, Protection Statistics, Summary Top 10, Asset Changes, and Live Status. The monitoring is done by Management Console of the computers for virus infections and security violations. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Setup Wizard

The Setup Wizard familiarizes you with the basic procedures and setup that is recommended by the eScan. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Managed Computers

The Managed Computers module lets you can define/configure policies for computers. It provides various options for creating groups, adding tasks, moving computers from one group to the other and redefining properties of the computers from normal to roaming users and vice versa. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Unmanaged Computers

The Unmanaged Computers module displays information about the computers that have not yet been assigned to any group. This section also lets you set the host configuration, move computers to a group, view the properties of a computer, or refresh the information about a client computer with Action List menu. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Report Templates

The Report Templates module lets you create and view customized reports based on a given template, for a given period; sorted by date, computer, or action taken; and for a selected condition or target group. It also provides options for configuring or scheduling reports, viewing report properties, and refreshing or deleting existing reports. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Report Scheduler

The Report Scheduler module lets you schedule a new reporting task, run an already created reporting schedule, or view its properties. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Events and Computers

The Events and Computers module lets you monitor various activities performed on client's computer. You can view log of all events based on Event Status, Computer Selection or Software/ Hardware Changes on that client computer. Using the Settings option on the screen you can define settings as desired. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Tasks for Specific Computers

The Tasks for Specific Computers module lets you create and run tasks like enable/disable protection(s) on specific computers, it also lets you schedule or modify created tasks for selected computers or groups. You can also easily re-define the settings of an already created task for a computer. It also lets you view results of the completed tasks. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Asset Management

The Asset Management module provides you the entire hardware configuration and list of software installed on computers in a tabular format. Using this module, you can easily keep a track of all the Hardware as well as Software resources installed on all the Computers connected to the Network. Based on different search criteria you can easily filter the information as per your requirement. It also lets you export the entire system information available through this module in PDF, Microsoft Excel or HTML formats. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.





User Activity

The User Activity module lets you monitor different tasks/activities like printing, session login time or actions on files in the client computers. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Patch Report

The Patch Report module displays the number of windows security patches installed and not installed on managed computers. This will help an administrator to identify the number of vulnerable systems in the network and install the critical patches quickly. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Notifications

The Notifications module provides you options to enable different notifications when different actions/incidents occur on the endpoints. You may choose to be notified or not to be notified based on the significance of these actions in your business. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Settings

The Settings module lets you configure eScan Console timeout settings, dashboard settings, and exclude client settings for eScan. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Administration

The Administration module lets you create User Accounts and allocate them Admin rights for using eScan Management Console. It is helpful in a large organization where installing eScan client on large number of computers in the organization may consume lot of time and efforts. By using this module, you can allocate rights to the other employees which will allow them to install eScan Client and implement policies and tasks on other computers. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

License

The License module lets you manage license of users. You can add, activate, and view the total number of licenses available for deployment, number of licenses deployed, and number of licenses remaining with their corresponding values. You can also move the licensed computers to non-licensed computers to licensed computers. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.





Dashboard

The Dashboard module displays statistics and status of eScan Client installed on computers in the form of pie chart. It consists of following tabs:

- Deployment Status
- Protection Status
- Protection Statistics
- Summary Top 10
- Asset Changes
- Live Status

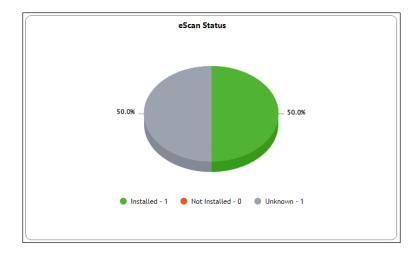
Deployment Status

This tab displays information about eScan Client installed on computers, active licenses, and current eScan version number in use.



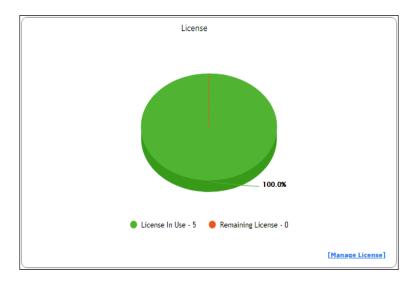


eScan Status



Installed – It displays the number of computers on which eScan Client is installed.
Not Installed - It displays the number of computers on which eScan Client is not installed.
Unknown - It displays the number of computers on which Client installation status is unknown.
(Server is unable to receive information from the computers for a long time)

License



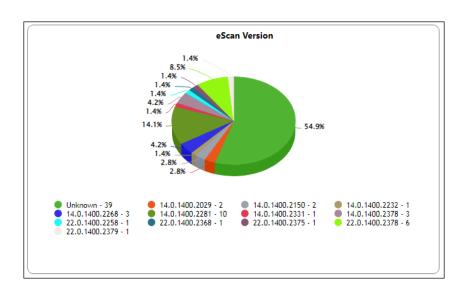
License in Use - It displays the number of licenses that are active. **Licenses Remaining** - It displays the number of remaining licenses.

eScan Version

The eScan Version chart shows the total number of eScan versions installed on the computers in the network.







Click on the numbers on the right-side of the each version, you can view the details of the computers.



ORDER Clicking underlined numerical displays detailed information for computers.



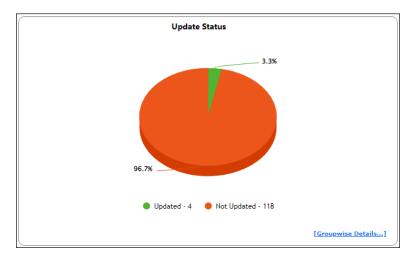


Protection Status

This tab displays the status of eScan Client's modules along with the Update and Scan status since last 7 days.



Update Status



Updated – It displays the number of computers on which virus signature database is updated. **Not Updated** - It displays the number of computers on which virus signature database is not updated.





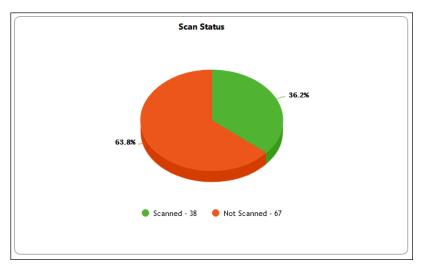
Clicking Groupwise Details displays Groupwise Update Status window.

Groupwise Update Status								Tuesda	y, Jun	e
🗄 🦰 Managed Computers	🗌 Include Sub Groups 🔽	Groupwise Details								<u>Prin</u>
	Group: Managed Compu	ters (Include Sub Gr	oups)							
	Group Name	Updated	Not Updated	License in Use	EP	EO	<u>CP</u>	<u>co</u>	<u>IL</u>	NA
	Managed Computers	2	0	2	1	0	1	0	0	0
	BT TEXN	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
	EM. TEAM	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0
	Samples Team	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0

It displays the number of computers on which virus database is Updated, Not Updated and Licenses in Use as per the group.

Selecting Include Sub Groups checkbox will display the subgroups containing computers.

Scan Status

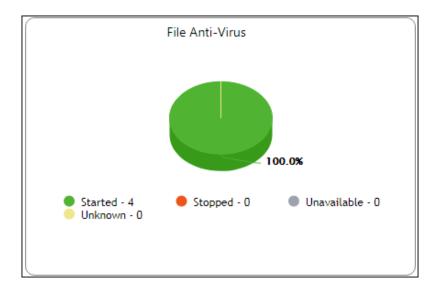


Scanned - It displays the number of computers that have been scanned in last 7 days for viruses and malware infections.

Not Scanned - It displays the number of computers that have not been scanned in last 7 days for virus and malware infections.



File Anti-Virus

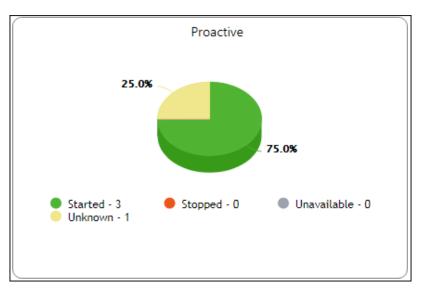


Started – It displays the number of computers on which the File Anti-Virus module is in started state. **Stopped** – It displays the number of computers on which the File Anti-Virus module is in stopped state.

Unavailable – It displays the number of computers where the File Anti-Virus module is unavailable. **Unknown** – It displays the number of computers where the File Anti-Virus module status is unknown.

Proactive

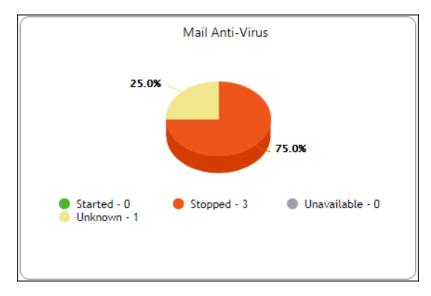
This module is available only in computers with Windows OS.



Started - It displays the number of computers on which Proactive scanning service is running. **Stopped** - It displays the number of computers on which Proactive scanning service is stopped. **Unavailable** – It displays the number of computers where Proactive scanning service is unavailable. **Unknown** - It displays the number of computers on which the Proactive scanning service status is unknown.



Mail Anti-Virus



Started – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Virus module is in started state.

Stopped – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Virus module is in stopped state.

Unavailable – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Virus module is unavailable.

Unknown – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Virus module status is unknown.

Anti-Spam 25.0% 75.0% • Started · 0 • Unknown · 1 • Stopped · 3 • Unavailable · 0

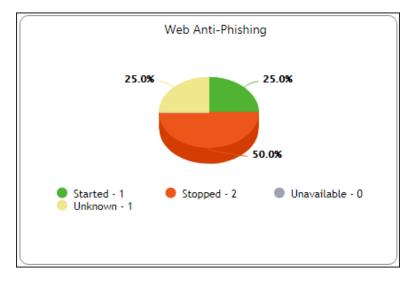
Started – It displays the number of computers on which the Anti-Spam module is in started state.
Stopped – It displays the number of computers on which the Anti-Spam module is in stopped state.
Unavailable – It displays the number of computers on which the Anti-Spam module is unavailable.
Unknown – It displays the number of computers on which the Anti-Spam module status is unknown.

Anti-Spam



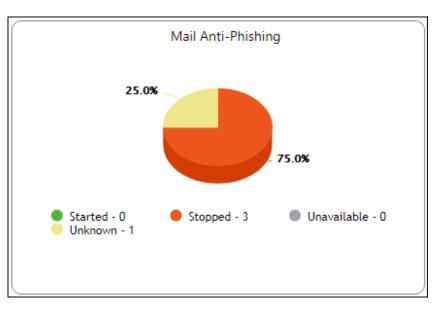


Web Anti-Phishing



Started – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Anti-Phishing service is started. **Stopped** – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Anti-Phishing service is stopped. **Unavailable** - It displays the number of computers on which the Web Anti-Phishing service is unavailable.

Unknown – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Anti-Phishing service status is unknown.



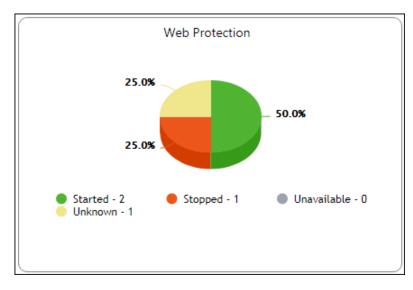
Mail Anti–Phishing

Started – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Phishing service is enabled. **Stopped** – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Phishing service is disabled. **Unavailable** – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Phishing service is unavailable.

Unknown – It displays the number of computers on which the Mail Anti-Phishing service status is unknown.



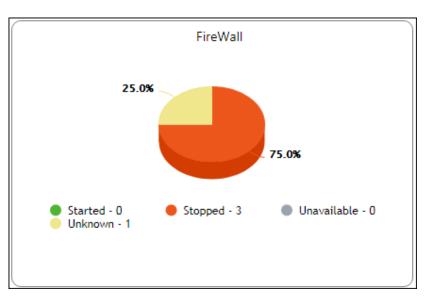
Web Protection



Started – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Protection module is in started state. **Stopped** – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Protection module is in stopped state.

Unavailable – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Protection module is unavailable.

Unknown – It displays the number of computers on which the Web Protection module status is unknown.



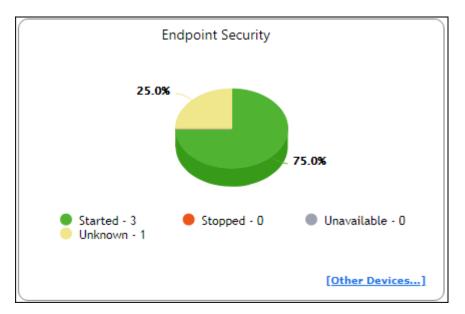
Started - It displays the number of computers on which the Firewall module is in started state.Stopped - It displays the number of computers on which the Firewall module is in stopped state.Unavailable - It displays the number of computers on which the Firewall module is unavailable.Unknown - It displays the number of computers on which the Firewall module status is unknown.

Firewall





Endpoint Security



Started - It displays the number of computers on which the Endpoint Security module is in started state.

Stopped - It displays the number of computers on which the Endpoint Security module is in stopped state.

Unavailable – It displays the number of computers on which the Endpoint Security module is unavailable.

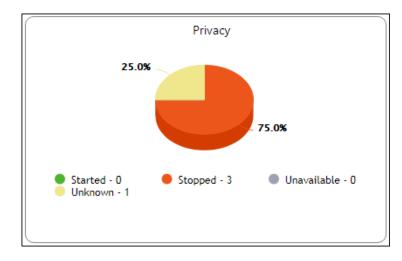
Unknown - It displays the number of computers on which the Endpoint Security module status is unknown.

Clicking Other Devices displays details about other devices.

her Devices Status					
Other Devices	Allowed	Blocked	<u>Unavailable</u>	Unknown	<u>Total</u>
SD Card	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
Web Cam	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
Bluetooth	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
USB Modem	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
Composite Devices	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
CD/DVD	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
Imaging Devices	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
WI-FI	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
Printer	3	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>4</u>
		Close			



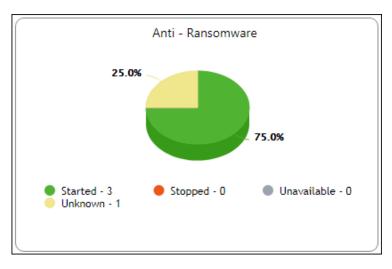
Privacy



Started - It displays the number of computers on which the Privacy Control module is in started state. **Stopped** - It displays the number of computers on which the Privacy Control module is in stopped state.

Unavailable - It displays the number of computers on which the Privacy Control module of eScan is unavailable.

Unknown - It displays the number of computers on which the Privacy Control module status is unknown.



Anti – Ransomware

Started - It displays the number of computers on which the Anti – Ransomware module is in started state.

Stopped - It displays the number of computers on which the Anti – Ransomware module is in stopped state.

Unavailable – It display the number of computers on which the Anti – Ransomware module unavailable to system.

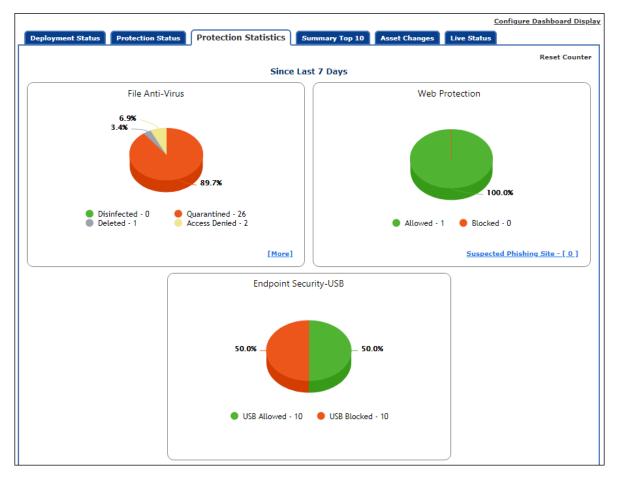
Unknown - It displays the number of computers on which the Anti – Ransomware module status is unknown.





Protection Statistics

This tab displays activity statistics and action taken by all modules of eScan Client since last seven days in pie chart format.

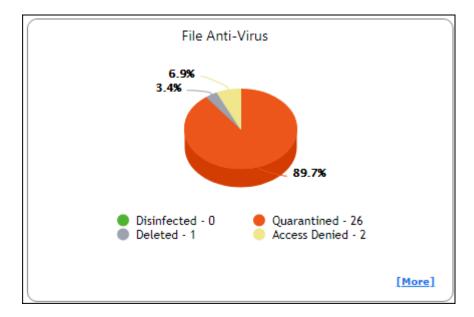


Reset Counter

Clicking **Reset Counter** resets all the statistics to zero. This option proves useful after you have taken an action on infected files and want to scan for residual infection presence.



File Anti-Virus



Disinfected – It displays the number of files disinfected by File Anti-Virus module.
Quarantined – It displays the number of files quarantined by File Anti-Virus module.
Deleted - It displays the number of files deleted by File Anti-Virus module.
Access Denied - It displays Access was denied on file by File Anti-Virus module.

Clicking underlined numerical displays action taken on infected files amongst different computers and groups that computer belongs to.

Protection Statistics >> File Anti-Virus >> Quarantined		
		Print
Machine Name	<u>Status</u>	<u>Group</u>
DESKTOP-LAAJOU5	Quarantined (1)	Managed Computers\GroupA
WIN-CLGDSNKTS1U	Quarantined (7)	Managed Computers
WIN-QT584UJC0GB	Quarantined (5)	Managed Computers\GroupA
	Close	





Clicking the **Status** link further displays the detection date and time, file path, infection description and computer's username.

Protection Statistics >> File Anti-Virus >> Quarantined (WI = 1 = 4 = 4 = 4 = 4 = 4 = 4 = 4 = 4 = 4						
			Prin			
Date/Time	File Name	Description	<u>User name</u>			
23/06/21		Infected by Virus:	W			
10:53:14	\\192 11.0 bt a dama'tang drasharif asnglasi alim,exe	Trojan (Seneric)(S) et a 786.33 (SR)	EDC#NDER//ER/Administrator			
23/06/21		Infected by Virus:	Willie			
10:53:15	\\192 111 1 bt a dama tang madani ang ang ang exe	Trojan, Seneral Chester 1915 (24)	EDC#NDER/ER/Administrator			
23/06/21		Infected by Virus:	Witte			
10:53:16	\\192, 11.0.21 and a mail barry chandrant as my as have, exe	Trojan (Seneric)(S) et 1740/e(2) (S4)	EDC///DEF//EF/Administrator			
23/06/21		Infected by Virus:	W			
10:53:16	\\192.] 11.0.21 and a national barry drawhard as not feature exe	Trojan.#utoruna.@eneric#(34.#E016#b#(34))	EDC#NOER./ER/Administrator			
23/06/21		Infected by Virus:	W			
10:53:16	\\192, ttt.i. tt adama' tang mad and annuas dhiffs exe	Trojan.Ceneric#Cheb133768 (34)	ESCANSER/ER/Administrator			

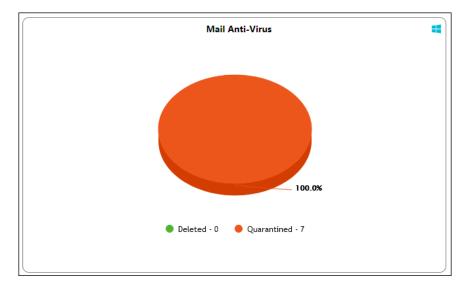
Clicking [More] displays additional protection statistics.

	_
Malware URL Block	2
Autorun Block	<u>0</u>
Executable Block USB	<u>0</u>
Executable Block Network	<u>0</u>
Executable Block User based	4
Proactive Statistics: Allow	<u>0</u>
Proactive Statistics: Block	2
Exploit Statistics Block	<u>0</u>
Ransomware Statistics Block	<u>Z</u>
Total	15



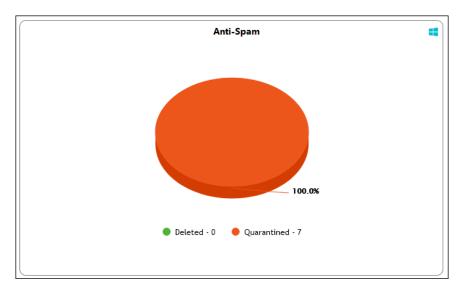
of DIGITAL WORLD

Mail Anti-Virus



Deleted – It displays the number of files/emails deleted by Mail Anti-Virus module. **Quarantined** – It displays the number of files/emails quarantined by Mail Anti-Virus module.

Anti-Spam

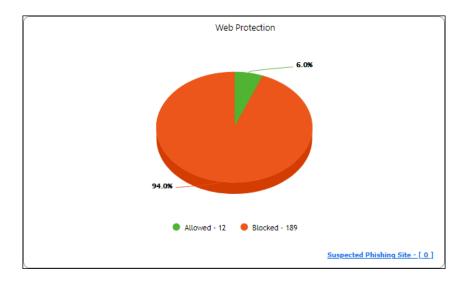


Deleted – It displays the number of mails deleted by Anti-Spam module. **Quarantined** – It displays the number of mails quarantined by Anti-Spam module.



of DIGITAL WORLD

Web Protection



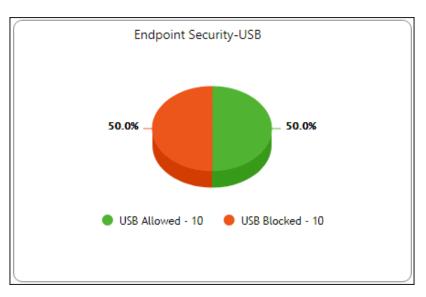
Allowed – It displays the number of websites to which access was allowed by Web Protection module.

Blocked – It displays the number of websites to which access was blocked by Web Protection module.

Suspected Phishing Site – It displays the number of systems on which suspected phishing sites were blocked. After clicking the numerical, Suspected Phishing Site window appears displaying System Name, Site Status, and Computer Group.

Clicking Site Status further displays Date, Time, Website name and action taken.

Endpoint Security-USB



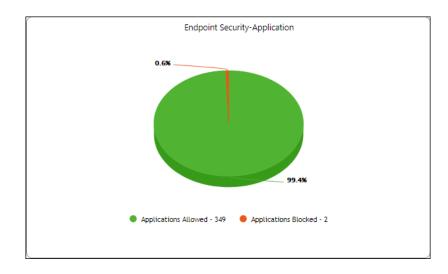
USB Allowed – It displays the number of USB access allowed along with the details for the same by Endpoint Security-USB module.

USB Blocked – It displays the number of USB access blocked along with the details for the same by Endpoint Security-USB module.





Endpoint Security-Application



Applications Allowed – It displays the number of applications allowed by Endpoint Security-Application module.

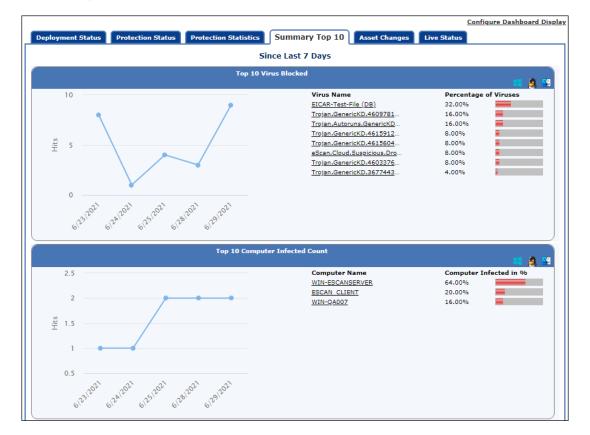
Applications Blocked – It displays the number of applications blocked by Endpoint Security-Application module.





Summary Top 10

This Tab displays top 10 Summary of various actions taken by eScan on all computers since last seven days along with bar chart and graph. This tab can be configured by clicking **Configure Dashboard Display**.



The tab displays the summary for following parameters:

- Top 10 Virus Blocked
- Top 10 Computer Infected Count
- Top 10 USB Blocked Count
- Top 10 Application Blocked Count by Application Name
- Top 10 Application Allowed Count by Application Name
- Top 10 Application Blocked Count by Computer Name
- Top 10 Application Allowed Count by Computer Name
- Top 10 Websites Blocked Count by Website Name
- Top 10 Websites Allowed Count by Website Name
- Top 10 Websites Blocked Count by Computer Name
- Top 10 Websites Allowed Count by Computer Name
- Top 10 Infected Emails(Mail AV)
- Top 10 Spam Emails(AntiSpam) from
- Top 10 Websites Blocked Count by Username
- Top 10 Websites Allowed Count by Username
- Top 10 Exploit Blocked Count





Asset Changes

This tab displays all hardware and software changes carried out on the endpoints since last seven days.

						Configure Dashboard Display
Deployment Status	Protection Status	Protection Statistic	s Summary Top 10	Asset Changes	Live Status	
		_	Since Last 7 Days		_	
	_				_	
			Hardware Changes			
		Description	Machine	Count	1	
		RAM		1		
		CPU		0		
		MOTHERBOARD		0		
		HARD DISK		0]	
			Software Changes			
				Uninstalled Softwares		
		WIN EDLANDER NET	1	0		
		WI	3	1]	

Hardware Changes – Clicking the underlined numerical displays hardware changes on computers since last seven days.

Software Changes - Clicking the underlined machine names displays softwares installed on the computers since last seven days. Clicking the underlined numerical displays installed / uninstalled softwares on computers since last seven days.





Live Status

This tab displays the number of computers that are online and offline in a network.

		Configure Dashboard Display
Deployment Status Protection Status Protection Statistics	Summary Top 10 Asset Changes Live Status	
	Live Status	
	Live Status	
	100.0%	
	Online - 2 Offline - 0	
)

Clicking the numerical displays the computer's username, status, eScan Client version number, and the group under which it is categorized.





Configure the Dashboard Display

To configure the Dashboard display,

1. In the Dashboard screen, at the upper right corner, click **Configure Dashboard Display**. Configure Dashboard Display window appears displaying tabs and their parameters.

Configure Dashboard Display		
- Deployment Status		
eScan Status	eScan Version	
License Summary		
Protection Status		
✓ Update Status	Scan Status	
File Anti-Virus		
Mail Anti-Virus		
	Mail Anti-Phishing	
Web Protection	Web Anti-Phishing	
Endpoint Security		
Anti-Ransomware		
Protection Statistics		
File Anti-Virus	Mail Anti-Virus	
Anti-Spam	U Web Protection	
Endpoint Security-USB	Endpoint Security-Application	
Summary Top 10		
Machine Infected	USB Blocked	
Application Allowed by Computer	Application Blocked by Computer	
Website Blocked by Computer	Website Allowed by Computer	
Application Blocked by App Name	Application Allowed by App Name	
Website Blocked by Sites	Website Allowed by Sites	
Website Blocked by Username	Website Allowed by Username	
Infected Emails	Spam Emails	
Virus Blocked	Exploit Blocked	
Live Status		
Live Status		
Graph Type		
Show 3D Graph		
Ok Cancel		

- 2. Select the parameters checkboxes to be displayed in the respective tabs.
- 3. Graph Type: select Shows 3D Graph checkbox to display 3D graph on dashboard.
- 4. Click OK.

The tabs will be updated according to the changes.



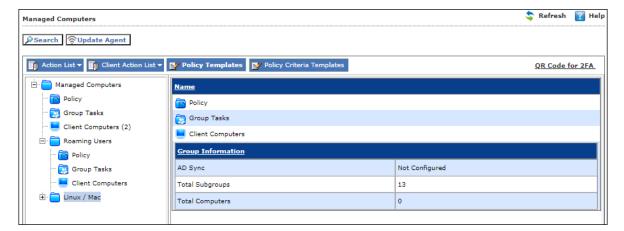


Managed Computers

To secure, manage, and monitor computers, it is necessary to add them in a group. The Managed Computers module lets you create computer groups, add computers to group, define policy templates for created groups and computers, create policy criteria templates, and tasks for specific groups.

Based on the departments, user roles and designations, you can create multiple groups and assign them different policies. This lets you secure and manage computers in a better way.

In the navigation panel, click **Managed Computers**. The Managed Computers screen appears on the right pane.



The screen consists of following buttons:

- Search
- Update Agent
- Action List
- Client Action List
- Policy Templates
- Policy Criteria Templates





Search

The Search feature lets you find any computer added in Managed Computers. After clicking **Search**, Search for Computers window appears.

lter							_			
Computer Name /	IP:									
User's name:										
	Find No	w								
Client Action Lis	t -									
			0.00							
mputer Name	Groups IP Ad	dress User nam	escan Stat	us <u>version</u>	Last Connectio	n Installed	Directory	Monitor Stat	us Anti-Sp	
										Th
									Ebackup	

Computer Name/IP

Enter a computer name or IP address.

Username

Enter a username.

Click **Find Now**. The console will display the result.

Client Action List

Client Action List lets you take action for specific computer(s) in a group from search field.





Update Agent

eScan lets you use a client computer as an update agent to deploy updates on group of computers.

By default, eScan server distributes the virus definitions and policies to all the clients added in the web console. But, to reduce server's workload, you can create an Update Agent for the respective group(s). The Update Agent will receive virus definitions and policies from server and distribute it to the assigned group(s). For more details, please refer <u>eScan Update Agents</u>.

In Managed Computers screen, clicking **Update Agent** displays a list of computers that are acting as Update Agents for other computers in the group. This window also lets you add or remove Update Agents from this list. You can set an Update Agent for multiple groups.

Adding an Update Agent

To add an Update Agent, follow the steps given below:

1. In Managed computers screen, click **Update Agent**. Update Agent window appears.

		E
Update Agent		👔 Help
Select Group Name and Update		
Update Agent:		
Group Name:		
Configure UA Settin	<u>95</u>	Add
Update Agent	IP Address	Assigned to Group(s)
WIN CONTRACTOR	192. 44.4.49	Managed Computers

2. Click next to Update Agent field, to select the computer. Select Computer widow appears.





			E
Select Computer	*	•	김 Hel
🚊 🦳 Managed Computer			
Roaming Users			
AD 			
		Ok	Cancel
* Note: Update Agent canr	not be set if Hostnar	ne exceed 15 charact	ers.

- 3. Select a computer and click **OK.**
- 4. Click next to Group Name field, to select the Group Name. The computer will act as an Update Agent for selected group and provide updates to computers present in the group.

Select Group	🝸 Help
🖻 💭 🧰 Managed Computers	
🛄 🗹 🦳 Roaming Users	
Ok Cancel	

- 5. Select the Group and click **OK.**
- 6. Click Add.

The Update Agent will be set for the selected group.





Configuring UA Settings

This option allows admin to configure the eScan Server by defining public IP address for directly downloading the updates in case of Update Agent is not available.

Ignore Customize/Server IP and Hostname for UA clients Add Customized FQDN / Server IP / Hostname of Primary server to UA / client setup : Test Save	
Add Customized FQDN / Server IP / Hostname of Primary server to UA / client setup : Test	
Test	
Course	
Save	
Note : Changes will not affect already added Update Agents. To apply above changes, delete and re cont	igure the
update agents.	

Ignore Customize/Server IP and Hostname for UA clients

Select this option to pause the update download for the clients until Update Agent is available to distribute the updates.

Add Customized FQDN / Server IP / Hostname of Primary server to UA / client setup

Enter the public address that has been assigned to the eScan Server through which clients can download the updates directly.

After assigning the IP address, click **Test** to test the connection.

Delete an Update Agent

To delete an Update Agent,

1. In Managed computers screen, click **Update Agent**. Update Agent window appears.

odate Agent		😨 He
-		
Update Agent	:	
Group Name:		
<u>Configure U/</u>	<u>A Settings</u>	Add
Update Agent	IP Address	Assigned to Group(s)
	192.000.000	Managed Computers

In the Assigned to Group(s) column, click
 A confirmation prompt appears.





:10443 says		
Do you want to remove update agent?		
	ОК	Cancel

3. Click **OK**. The Update Agent will be deleted.





Action List

The Action List takes you action for a group. The drop-down contains following options:

- New Subgroup
- Set Group Configuration
- Deploy/Upgrade Client
- Uninstall eScan Client
- Remove Group
- Synchronize with Active Directory
- Outbreak Prevention
- Create Client Setup
- Properties

Creating a Group

To create a group, follow the steps given below:

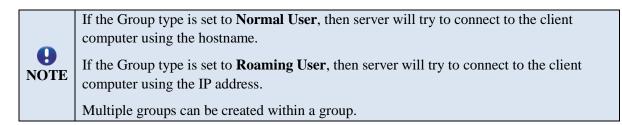
1. Click Action List > New Subgroup.

Creating New Group window appears.

	reating New Group		🝸 Help
	Create New Group —]
	New Group Name :		
	Group Type :	Normal User	~
	Policy Templates :	Group Default Policy	~
(Ok Cance	I	

- 2. Enter a name for the group.
- 3. Click the **Group Type** drop-down and select a type.
- 4. Click the **Policy Templates** drop-down and select a policy for the group.
- 5. Click **OK**.

A new group will be created under the Managed Computers.







Removing a Group

To remove a group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select a group.
- 2. Click Action List > Remove Subgroup.

A confirmation prompt appears.

Remove Group	
Do you really want to remove the group "	
Ok Cancel	

3. Click OK.

The group will be removed.

U
NOTE

A group will be removed only if it contains no computers.

Set Group Configuration

With this option you can define single Username and Password to login for all the computers in the group.

To set a group configuration, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select the group you want to configure.
- 2. Click Action List > Set Group Configuration. Set Group Configuration window appears.

Group Name:	Managed Computers		
Remarks:			
User name:	Administrator		
Password:			

- 3. Enter Remarks and define Login credentials.
- 4. Click Save.

The group configuration will be saved.

Please specify the Domain name, if hostname is in another Domain.





Managing Installations

After grouping all computers in logical groups using eScan Management Console, you can now install eScan Client as well as other third party software on the computers connected to your network.

[Conditions Apply]

This section will give you an overview on following activities:

Installing eScan Client

eScan Client can be installed on computers connected to the network in the following ways:

- **Remote Installation**: It lets you install eScan Client on all the computers in a selected group at once. You can initiate and monitor eScan Client installation using eScan Management Console. For more, click here.
- **Manual Installation**: In case remote installation fails, you can allow computer users to install eScan client manually on their computers. It does not require any remote assistance. For more, click here.
- **Installing eScan using agent**: Installation of agent ensures that you have Administrator rights on the computer and you can now remotely install eScan Client on that computer. For more, click here.
- **Installing other Software (3rd Party software)**: eScan Management Console lets you install third party software on network computers remotely. <u>For more, click here</u>.
- Viewing Installed Software List: Using Show Installed Software option you can view list of software installed on computers connected to your network. You will find this option in Client Action list under Managed Computers when you select a computer.
- **Force Download**: This option is present under Client Action List in Managed Computers. You can update eScan client on any network computer by using this option. It is required in cases where client has not been updated on the computer for many days.

To initiate Force download, in the **Managed Computers** module, select the client computer and click **Client Action list** > **Force Download**.

It will initiate the force download process on selected Client computers.

	-	
	Co	onditions for third party software installation:
P NOTE	•	After starting the installation from eScan Management Console, no manual intervention should be required to complete the installation on Client computer. Only automated installations can be done through eScan Management Console. Care should be taken that the installation file is not huge as it may impact internal network speed of your organization.

Remote Installation of eScan Client

Pre-Installation

To prepare a client computer for the remote deployment of eScan Elite for Business; begin with checking if the basic system requirements are in place.

Configure the settings on the client computer according to the OS installed on it

- Windows XP Professional systems
- Windows XP Home
- Windows Vista / Windows 7 / Windows 8 / Windows 8.1 / Windows 10 / Windows 11





Configuring the settings on Windows XP Professional systems (Windows XP, 2000, 2003, all editions)

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click the Administrative Tools icon.
- 3. Double-click the Local Security Policy icon.
- 4. On the navigation pane, click Local Policies folder, and then click Security Options folder.
- 5. Double-click Network Access: Sharing and Security Model for Local accounts policy.
- 6. Select Classic Local user authenticate as themselves option from the drop-down list.
- 7. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.
- 8. Double-click the Accounts: Limit local account use of blank passwords to console logon only policy.

The Accounts: Limit local account use of blank passwords to console logon only dialog box appears.

- 9. Click **Disabled** option.
- 10. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

If Windows firewall is enabled on all locations, select **File and Printer Sharing** checkbox, under **Exceptions** tab (**Control Panel >> Windows Firewall >> Exception**).

For Windows XP Home

Since Windows XP Home has limitations with regards to remote deployment, MWAgent should be installed on your system. You can download MWAgent from the eScan web console.

For Windows Vista / Windows 7 / Windows 8 / Windows 8.1 / Windows 10 / Windows 11

- 1. Launch Run.
- 2. Enter **secpol.msc**, and then click **OK**. Local Security Settings window appears.
- 3. On the navigation pane, click **Local Policies** folder, and then double-click **Security Options** folder.

The security policy appears.

- 4. Double-click Network access: Sharing and security model for local accounts policy.
- 5. Select Classic Local users authenticate as themselves option present in the drop-down.
- 6. Click **Apply** > **OK**.
- 7. Double-click Accounts: Limit local account use of blank passwords to console logon only policy.
- 8. Select **Disabled** option.
- 9. Click **Apply** > **OK**.
- 10. If the firewall is enabled, select File and Printer Sharing checkbox, under Exceptions tab.
- 11. On desktop, click **Start**, and right-click **My Computer**, click **Manage**. Computer Management window appears.
- 12. On the navigation pane, click Local Users and Groups option, and then click Users folder, and double-click Administrator.

Administrator Properties window appears.

- 13. Check Password never expires and uncheck Account is disabled checkbox.
- 14. Click **Apply** > **OK**.





Deploy/Upgrade Client

To Deploy/Upgrade eScan client on all computers in a group or an individual computer, follow the steps given below:

Installing eScan Client on a Group

- 1. Select the group on which you want to install eScan client.
- 2. Click **Action List** > **Deploy/Upgrade Client**. Client Installation window appears.

nt Installation	
ect Application for Installation:	
Install eScan	
Select eScan Installation Options:	
Auto Reboot after Install	
Install Without Firewall	
Disable auto downloading of Windows patches by eScan	
installation Path	
<default> Add</default>	
Install Other Software	
Required files for Installation	
C:\PROGRA~2\eScan\Setup\Launchit.Exe,C:\PROGRA~2\ eScan\Setup\Setup.exe	
Executable file	
Launchit.exe 🗸 Edit Script	
Parameters	
/Setupfile=Setup.exe	
Install Agent	
Install local client setup	
Required files for Installation	

3. Select Install eScan option.

By Default eScan is installed at the following Path on a Client computer. C:\Program Files\eScan (default path for 32-bit computer)

OR

C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan (default path for 64-bit computers).

- 4. To define a different installation path, click Add. (Skip this step if default path chosen).
- 5. Click Install.

A window displays File transfer progress.

After Installation, the eScan status will be updated in Managed Computers list.





Installing eScan Client on an Individual Computer in a Group

- 1. Select a group.
- 2. Under the group, click **Client Computers**.
- 3. Select a computer.
- 4. Click **Client Action List** > **Deploy/Upgrade Client**. Client Installation window appears.

ient Installation	👔 Help
ect Application for Installation:	
Install eScan	
Select eScan Installation Options:	
Auto Reboot after Install	
Install Without Firewall	
Disable auto downloading of Windows patches by eScan	
Installation Path	
<pre>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>></pre>	
Install Other Software	
Required files for Installation	
C:\PROGRA~2\eScan\Setup\Launchit.Exe,C:\PROGRA~2\ eScan\Setup\Setup.exe Add	
Executable file	
Launchit.exe 🗸 Edit Script	
Parameters	
/Setupfile=Setup.exe	
O Install Agent	
🔾 Install local client setup	
Required files for Installation	
Add	

5. Select **Install eScan** option.

By default eScan is installed at the following path on a Client computer.

C:\Program Files\eScan (default path for 32-bit computer)

OR

C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan (default path for 64-bit computers).

6. To define a different installation path, click Add. (Skip this step if default path chosen).

7. Click Install.

A window displays File transfer progress.

After eScan installation, the eScan status will be updated in Managed Computers list.





Manual installation of eScan Client on network computer(s)

If remote installation is not possible, you may manually install the eScan Management Console. To install manually, the download links for manually installation of the **eScan Client** or **Agent** are displayed on the **Login Page** > **Setup Links** of eScan Management Console. Forward this link to the user of the Client computer on mail and guide the user through the installation process.

eScan Client Setup (Windows)	\sim
eScan Agent Setup (Windows)	\sim

Installing eScan Client Using Agent

You may install the eScan Client using an Agent in following ways:

- Remotely installing agent on Client computer(s)
- Manually installing agent on Client computer(s)

Remotely installing agent on Client computer(s)

- 1. Click Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the computer(s) from a group.
- 3. Click Client Action List > Deploy/Upgrade Client.
- 4. Select Install Agent option and click Install.

eScan Agent will be installed on selected computers.

ProtectThis option useful in case there are glitches in the network connectivity between server
and Client computer. It will overcome those glitches and speed up the client installation
on the selected computers.

Manually installing eScan Agent on Client computer(s)

To manually install eScan Agent on computers, please send the link displayed on the **Login Page** > **Setup Links** of eScan Management Console to the users of the Client computer on mail.

<	
eScan Client Setup (Windows)	\sim
eScan Agent Setup (Windows)	\sim





Installing other Software (Third Party Software)

To install third party software on computers, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click Managed Computers.
- 2. Select a computer from a group.
- 3. Click Client Action List > Deploy/Upgrade Client.
- Client Installation window appears.4. Select Install Other Software option.

Client Installation	👔 Help	1
Select Application for Installation:		
Install eScan		
Select eScan Installation Options:		
Auto Reboot after Install		
Install Without Firewall		
Disable auto downloading of Windows patches by eScan		
Installation Path		
<default></default>		
O Install Other Software		
Required files for Installation		
C:\PROGRA~2\eScan\Setup\Launchit.Exe,C:\PROGRA~2\ eScan\Setup\Setup.exe Add		
Executable file		
Launchit.exe 🗸 Edit Script		
Parameters		
/Setupfile=Setup.exe		
O Install Agent		
O Install local client setup		
Required files for Installation		
Add		

5. Click Add.

Add Files window appears.

Add Files	
Add Cancel	

 Enter the exact path of the EXE (on eScan Server) and click Add. The selected EXE will be added to the "Required files for Installation" list.





Install Other Software	
Required files for Installation	
c:\test\tvnserver.exe	Add
Executable file	
tvnserver.exe 🗸	Edit Script
Parameters	
-remove]

- 7. The Executable Filename will be displayed in the respective drop-down menu.
- 8. Define the command line parameters if required.
- 9. Click **Install** to initiate the installation process.

A confirmation message appears.

Client Installation 💡 Help
5/3/ 11:09:02 AM : []: Connecting to Computer
5/3/ 11:09:02 AM : []: Deploying other software files to host 5/3/ 11:09:02 AM : []: Copying file 1 of 1
5/3/ 11:09:03 AM :]]: Completed 100 % 5/3/ 11:09:04 AM : []: Task 'Install/Upgrade Software on Host' successfully scheduled on
Close Cancel

Uninstall eScan Client (Windows)

To uninstall eScan Client on all the computers in a group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select the group of computers for uninstallation.
- 2. Click Action List > Uninstall eScan Client.
 - Client Uninstallation window appears.

Client Uninstallation
Ready to Start Uninstallation Click "Uninstall" to Start Uninstallation
Uninstall Cancel

3. Click Uninstall.

The Client Uninstallation window displays the progress.





8/6/2021 2:41:14 PM 8/6/2021 2:41:15 PM 8/6/2021 2:41:15 PM	[]: Connecting to Computer []: Reading Host Details []: Version 22.0.1400. []: Service Pack 2373 []: Task 'Uninstall eScan on Host(s)' sur	ccessfully scheduled on	
---	--	-------------------------	--

After the uninstallation process is over, click **Close**.

You can uninstall eScan Client from all the computers in the group by selecting the Group and then click Action List > Uninstall eScan Client.





Synchronize with Active Directory

To synchronize a group with Active Directory, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group for synchronization.
- 2. Click Action List > Synchronize with Active Directory. Synchronize with Active Directory window appears.

Target Groups :	
Managed Computers	Browse
Source Active Directory Organisation Unit :	
	Browse
Synchronization interval :	
60 Minutes (Minimum 5 Minutes)	
Exclude From ADS Sync	
Excluded ADS Sources	Add to Exclude
	Delete
	Delete
Search Filter :	
: (objectClass=*)	
Install eScan client automatically	
Select eScan Installation Options:	
Install Without Firewall	

Target Groups

Click Browse and select a Managed Group.

Source Active Directory Organization Unit

Click Browse and select an Active Directory.

Synchronization Interval

Enter the preferred duration (in minutes).

Exclude from ADS Sync

This field displays a list of excluded Active Directory sources. To exclude a source, select the source and then click **Add to Exclude**.





To delete a source, select the checkbox **Excluded ADS Sources**. Select a source(s) and then click **Delete**.

Search Filter It lets you search an Active Directory for an object class.

Install eScan manually Selecting this option lets you install eScan manually on the computers.

Install without Firewall

Selecting this option lets you install eScan without firewall.

3. After performing the necessary actions, click **OK**.

The group will be synchronized with the Active Directory.

Outbreak Prevention

Upon virus detection, eScan quarantines the virus and restricts it from spreading across the network. The Outbreak Prevention feature lets you configure policies for the network.

Deploying Outbreak Prevention

To deploy Outbreak Prevention feature, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group.
- 2. Click Action List > Outbreak Prevention. Outbreak Prevention window appears.

	🔽 He
break Prevention	··· 1
Deploy Outbreak Prevention	Restore Outbreak Prevention
Outbreak Prevention Policies	
Limit access to shared folders (Allow	w read only access)
Deny write access to local files and	folder
Block Specific Ports	
Block All Ports (Other than trusted	client-server ports)
Automatically restore outbreak prev	vention after 1 V hours(s)
~	
Dutbreak Prevention Notification	
~	prevention starts 207/250
Notify client users when outbreak p Message: eScan has detected a security risk outb	
Notify client users when outbreak p Message: eScan has detected a security risk outb	207/250 reak on your network. To prevent the security risk from spreading, your eScan
Notify client users when outbreak p Message: eScan has detected a security risk outb	207/250 reak on your network. To prevent the security risk from spreading, your eScan
Notify client users when outbreak p Message: eScan has detected a security risk outb	207/250 preak on your network. To prevent the security risk from spreading, your eScan hat may prevent you from accessing network resources.





Limit access to shared folders (Allow read only access)

Select this checkbox to limit the access of shared folder to read only. This will prevent infection to write into shared folder.

Deny write access to local files and folder

Select this checkbox to deny write access for any local files and folders. Clicking the link displays another window that lets you specifically select folders and subfolders that should be denied and allowed access for modification.

eny write access to local files and fo		
File / Folder Name	Include Subfolder	Add Delete RemoveAll
llow Modification for following Files File / Folder Name	Include Subfolder	Add
		RemoveAll

Block specific ports

Select this checkbox to prevent infection from accessing specific ports. Clicking the link displays another window that lets you block incoming and outgoing data packets along with TCP and UDP ports.

	Protocol	Direction V Incoming	✔ Add
D			Edit
Port(s)	Protocol	Direction	Delete
			RemoveAll

Block All Ports (Other than trusted client-server ports)

Select this checkbox to block all ports other than trusted client server ports.

Automatically restore the outbreak prevention after hour(s)

This feature lets you restore outbreak prevention automatically after set duration (hours). Click the drop-down and select the preferred duration.





Outbreak Prevention Notification

To send a notification to client users after Outbreak Prevention is deployed, select the checkbox **Notify client users when outbreak prevention starts**. You can even write your own custom message for this feature in the Message field.

After making the necessary selections, click **Deploy**.

The Outbreak Prevention feature will be deployed for the selected group.

Order The incorrect configuration of Outbreak Prevention can cause problems in computer	ers.
--	------

Restore Outbreak Prevention

In the Outbreak Prevention window, click **Restore Outbreak Prevention** tab.

Deploy Outbreak Preve	Restore Outbreak Prevention	
estore Outbreak Preve	ntion	
0		
	ter restoring the original settings	96/250
Message:	ter restoring the original settings rcing outbreak prevention policies and has restored pre-outbreak settings.	96/250

To restore Outbreak Prevention manually, click **Restore**.

To notify clients about Outbreak Prevention restoration, select the checkbox **Notify client users after the original settings**.





Create Client Setup

To create a Client setup, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group.
- 2. Click Action List > Create Client Setup. Create Client Setup window appears.

Create Client Setup	김 Help
Setup Settings	
Add Policy	
Auto add to group	
Create Setup Cancel	

- 3. Select the necessary settings.
 - Add Policy: This option is enabled after the policy applied to client computers.
 - Auto add to group: This option will add the endpoint(s) to the respective group automatically after endpoint installation.
- 4. Click Create Setup.

The Client setup will be created and a download link will be displayed in right pane.

<u>Name</u>	Download Client Setup	
Policy		
🗑 Group Tasks		
📃 Client Computers		
Group Information		
AD Sync		Not Configured
Total Subgroups		20
Total Computers		5





Properties of a group

To view the properties of a group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select a group.
- 2. Click Action List > Properties. Properties window appears.

Properties (Managed Com	outers)	<table-cell> Help</table-cell>	*
General			
Name :	Managed Computers		
Parent Group :			
Group Type :	Normal User 🖌		
Contains :	20 Groups , 5 Computers		
Created :	06/19/2021 4:37:02 PM		

In Properties, General tab displays following details:

- Group Name
- Parent Group
- Group Type Normal or Roaming User
- Contains Number of Sub Groups and Computers in that Group
- Creation date of the Group





Group Tasks

With the Group Tasks option, you can create a task, start a task, select a task and view its properties and results as well as delete an already created task. Tasks can include the following.

- Enable/Disable desired Module
- Set Update Server
- Scheduling Scan on Networked Computers

Creating a Group Task

To create a Group Task, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select a group.
- 2. In group's folder tree, click **Group Tasks**.
- 3. In the Group Tasks pane, click New Task.

Action List 🔻 🛐 Client Action List 🔻		QR Code for 2FA
- 🛅 Managed Computers	Group Tasks	💲 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
Policy		
🔯 Group Tasks		
🤜 Client Computers (3)	F New Task 🗊 Start Task 📝 Properties F Results 前 Delete	
🗄 🦳 🦰 Roaming Users	Task Name Task Performed Assigned To Whom	Schedule Type
🗄 🦳 Linux / Mac		<u>Scheddle Type</u>

New Task Template window appears.





ame			
_	w Task		
ask name:	W Idsk.		
ed Tasks			
File Anti-Virus Status Enabled			
 Enabled Disabled 			
Mail Anti-Virus Status			
Enabled			
Disabled			
Anti-Spam Status			
Enabled			
Disabled			
U Web Protection Status			
Enabled			
Disabled			
Endpoint Security Status			
Enabled			
Disabled			
Firewall Status			
Disable Firewall			
Enable Limited Filter			
Enable Interactive File			
Alternate Download Status Enabled	5		
Disabled			
Start/Stop Another Server			
Start Server			
Stop Server			
Set Update Server			
Add Server Name/IP	WIN-CLGDSNKTS1U,192.168.0.155	ō	
Remove Server Name/IP			
🗌 Scan			
Type			
Memory / Serv	ices	Registry	
System Folder		Scan network drives	
Scan Local Driv		Computer Startup	
Scan Data			
	a Drives		
Option			
Scan Archives	n After Scan Completion		
Scan Only	And Scan Completion		
Force Client to Download U	Jpdate		
	can Server		
Sync System Time with es			

- 4. Enter the Task Name and configure the desired task settings.
- 5. Schedule the date and time for the execution of task.





Enable Sch	heduler	0	Manual Start	
Daily				
O Weekly	Mon	🗌 Tue	Wed	🗌 Thu
	🗌 Fri	Sat	Sun	
O Monthly	1 💙			
At	12:00 pm	© •		

6. Click Save.

The selected group will be assigned a task template.

Managing a Group Task

Selecting a Group Task enables Start Task, Properties, Results and Delete buttons.

Grou	ıp Tasks			💲 Refre	esh 👔 Help
Ð	New Task 🛐 S	Start Task 🛃 Properties	Results Delete		
	<u>Task Name</u>	Task Performed	Assigned To Whom	Schedule Type	
~	tech	Not Performed Yet	'Managed Computers'	Automatic Scheduler	<u>Task Status</u>

Start Task

To start a task manually, select a task and then click **Start Task**.

Properties

To view the properties of a task, select a task and then click **Properties**. The **General** tab displays the information such as task name, creation date and time, status of the task. It also lets you modify or redefine the entire settings configured using **Schedule** and **Settings** tab. After making the necessary changes, click **Save**.

tech	👔 Help
General Schedule	Settings
Task Name	tech
Task Creation Time:	06/30/21 02:37:25 PM
Status:	Task not performed yet
Last Run:	
Save Close	

The properties for the group task will be saved and updated.





Results

To view the results of a completed task, select a task and then click **Results**.

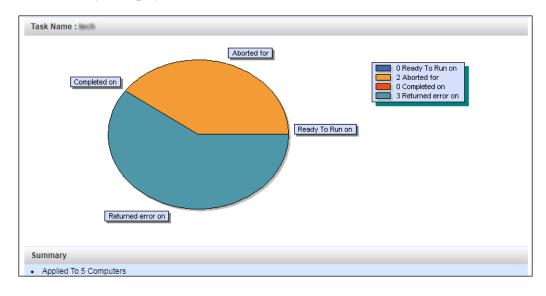
Grou	p Tasks			🗢 Refr	esh 👔 Help
Ð	New Task	art Task	Results 🗊 Delete		
	Task Name	Task Performed	Assigned To Whom	<u>Schedule Type</u>	
	hadh	Completed	'Managed Computers'	Automatic Scheduler	<u>Task Status</u>

Delete Task

To delete a task, select a particular task. The confirmation prompt appears. Click **Delete**.

Task Status

To view the status, select a task and then click **Task Status**. A brief task summary is displayed.







Assigning a Policy to the group

To assign a Policy to the group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group.
- 2. Under the group name, click **Policy**. Policy pane appears on the right side.

- Managed Computers	Policy	💲 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
🙀 Group Tasks 🛄 Client Computers (3)	P Select Template	
⊞. 📄 Roaming Users ⊕. 📄 Linux / Mac	Assigned Template	Date And Time of Assigned Template
È	SAMPLES	Jun 29 2021 12:25:45 PM
🗄 - 🧰 Samula I sam	Criteria Change Criteri Criteria Criteria to be set in case of conflict	a 🗎 Remove
📄 Policy 🔯 Group Tasks	Criteria Assigned Policy Te	mplate Date And Time of Assigned Criteria
Elent Computers (1)		

3. To assign a Policy Template to group, click **Select Template**. New policy window appears.

Policy	
olicy Template Selection	
Group Default Policy QA SAMPLES	^
	Ŧ
elect	

- 4. Select a policy template and then click **Select**.
- 5. To assign criteria to the group, click **Select Criteria**. Select Policy Criteria window appears.





ect Policy Criteria	🝸 Hel
Set this criteria as a default criteria in case of conflict	
Policy Template Selection	
Group Default Policy	
Criteria Template Selection	
deme	
•	

- If a computer falls under both conditions created by you, it will create a conflict. To avoid such conflict, select the checkbox Set this criteria as a default criteria in case of conflict. Then select the Policy Template and Criteria Template to be used in case of conflict.
- 7. Click Select.

The default Policy Template and Criteria Template for group will be saved and updated.





Client Action List

Client Action List lets you take action for specific computer(s) in a group. To enable this button, select computer and then click **Client Action List**.

The drop-down consists of following options:

- Set Host Configuration
- Deploy/Upgrade Client
- Uninstall eScan Client
- Move to Group
- Remove from Group
- Refresh Client
- Connect to Client (RMM)
- Assign Policy Template
- Show Critical Events
- Export
- Show Installed Softwares
- Force Download
- Forensic-Port/Communication
- On Demand Scanning
- Send Message
- Outbreak Prevention
- Delete All Quarantine Files
- Create OTP
- Pause Protection
- Resume Protection
- Properties

The Client Action List contains few options similar to Action List. These options perform same, except they perform the action only for selected computer(s).





Set Host Configuration

If you are unable to view details of Windows OS installed computer with Properties option, set its Host Configuration. Doing so will build communication between the server and selected computer, displaying its details.

To set Host Configuration for a selected computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select the computer.
- 2. Click **Client Action List** > **Set Host Configuration**. Set Host Configuration window appears.

Set Host Configurati	on 🧃 He
Login Information	
Computer Name:	Support-733
Remarks:	
User name:	Administrator
Password:	•
Note: If Host Name	: is in another Domain, Please mention Domain Name Ex. Domain1\HostName
Save Cancel	

- 3. Enter Remarks and login credentials.
- 4. Click Save.

The Host will be configured as per new settings.

Deploy/Upgrade Client

To Deploy/Upgrade eScan client on selective computers in a group or an individual computer, follow the steps given below:

Installing eScan Client on a Client Computer

- 1. Select a client computer within a group to install eScan client.
- Click Client Action List > Deploy/Upgrade Client. Client Installation window appears.





Client Installation	p
Select Application for Installation:	11
Install eScan	
Select eScan Installation Options:	
Auto Reboot after Install	
Install Without Firewall	
Disable auto downloading of Windows patches by eScan	
Installation Path	
<default> Add</default>	
O Install Other Software	
Required files for Installation	
C:\PROGRA~2\eScan\Setup\Launchit.Exe,C:\PROGRA~2\ eScan\Setup\Setup\exe Add	
Executable file	
Launchit.exe 🗸 Edit Script	
Parameters	
/Setupfile=Setup.exe	
O Install Agent	
O Install local client setup	
Required files for Installation	
Add	-

3. Select Install eScan option.

By Default eScan is installed at the following Path on a Client computer. C:\Program Files\eScan (default path for 32-bit computer)

OR

C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan (default path for 64-bit computers).

- 4. To define a different installation path, click Add. (Skip this step if default path chosen).
- 5. Click Install.

A window displays File transfer progress.

After Installation, the eScan status will be updated in Managed Computers list.

Uninstall eScan Client

To uninstall eScan Client on any computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select the computer for uninstallation.
- 2. Click **Client Action List** > **Uninstall eScan Client**. Client Uninstallation window appears.

Client Uninstallation
Ready to Start Uninstallation Click "Uninstall" to Start Uninstallation
Uninstall Cancel



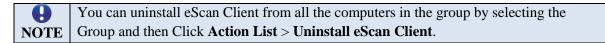


3. Click Uninstall.

The Client Uninstallation window displays the progress.

/26/2019 4:47:37 PM : []: Connecting to Computer
/26/2019 4:47:37 PM : []: Reading Host Details
/26/2019 4:47:37 PM : []: Version
/26/2019 4:47:37 PM : []: Service Pack 2220
/26/2019 4:47:37 PM : []: Task 'Uninstall eScan on Host(s)' successfully scheduled on

4. After the uninstallation process is over, click Close.



Move to Group

To move computers from one group to other, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to **Managed Computers**.
- 2. Select the desired computers present in a group.
- 3. Click **Client Action List** > **Move to Group.**
- 4. Select the group in the tree to which you wish to move the selected computers and click **OK**.

The computers will be moved to the selected group.

Remove from Group

To remove computers from a group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the desired computers for removal.
- 3. Click **Client Action List** > **Remove from Group**. A confirmation prompt appears.
- 4. Click OK.

The computers will be removed from the group.

Refresh Client

To refresh status of any client computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Under any group, click **Client Computers**.
- A list of computers appears on the right pane.
- 2. Select a computer.
- 3. Click Refresh Client.

The Client status will be refreshed.





Connect to Client (RMM)

To add a computer to RMM licensed category, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the client computer which you want to connect to RMM.
- 3. Click Client Action List > Connect to Client (RMM).
- Read the disclaimer thoroughly and then click Accept. Your default browser opens eScan Remote Access window (Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, MS Edge, etc.).

After you are done performing an activity, click **Disconnect** icon to end remote connection.

Manage Add-On License

To manage add-on licenses, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the client computer which you want to manage 2FA, DLP, and E-Backup Licenses.
- Click Client Action List > Manage Add-On License. Manage Add-On License window appears.

E	3
Manage Add-On License	
2FA DLP]
Add	
Remove	
License Information 2FA	
License Size : 5 License Remaining : 5 DLP	
License Size : 5 License Remaining : 5	
Ok Cancel	

4. Select **Add** to add a client computer to 2FA, DLP, and E-Backup licenses or **Remove** to remove the added client computer and then click **OK**.

The computer gets added or removed from 2FA, DLP, and E-Backup licenses as per your preferred option.





Assign Policy Template

To assign policy template to specific computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the client computer for which you want to assign policy template.
- 3. Click **Client Action List** > **Assign Policy Template**. Manage Policy Configuration window appears.

olicy Template Selection	
Assigned Group Policy(ESCAN_DEFAULT_POLICY) QA SAMPLES	•
	Ŧ

4. Select the policy template and click **Select** to add.

The computer get assign with the selected policy template.

Show Critical Events

To show critical events of specific computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the client computer which you want to assign policy template.
- 3. Click Client Action List > Show Critical Events.

This will display the list of all the critical events of the computer that can also be exported as a report.

Export

To export a client computer's data, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and then click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.

🋐 Action List 🔻 🛐 Client Action List 👻 🤣 Refresh Client 🚴 Anti-Theft 👻 🛐 Select Columns							
🗄 🧰 Managed Computers	0	💻 eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	t Installed 1 - 3 of 3 🖂	page 1 of 1 → > Row		
Policy		Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	<u>User name</u>		
Group Tasks		WITH-SIL	192.000.0.070		WIN WINSTON		
Client Computers (3)		MON-GUP	192.000.040		WIN CO. P. com		
🗄 💼 Roaming Users		MIN-QR017	192.008.0.017				
È: 🛑 1000achtea È: 🛑 Whatbagg Screen Stroop		-		1			

2. Select a client computer and the click **Client Action List** > **Export**.





Export Selected Columns window appears displaying export options and a variety of columns to be exported.

Select All Columns	IP Address	✓ IP Address of the connection	User name
Local Administrator User(s)	eScan Status	Version	Last Connection
Installed Directory	Monitor Status	Anti-Spam	🗹 Mail Anti-Virus
Web Protection	Endpoint Security	Firewall	🗹 Last Update
Update Server	Client OS	Status	Last Policy Applied
Last Policy Applied Time	🗹 Last eBackup Status		

- 3. Select the preferred export option.
- 4. Select the preferred report columns.
- 5. Click Export.

The report will be exported as per your preferences.

Show Installed Softwares

This feature displays a list of installed softwares on a computer.

To view the list of installed softwares, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and then click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.

🋐 Action List 🔻 🋐 Client Action List 🔻 🤣 Refresh Client 😤 Anti-Theft 🕶 🋐 Select Columns						
🗄 🗂 Managed Computers		0	💻 eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	t Installed 1 - 3 of 3 🗔 👘	age 1 of 1 → > Rov
··· 🖻 Policy			Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	User name
🔯 Group Tasks			W/29-11	192.048.0.099		WIN-1 President
Client Computers (3)			WEN-OLP	192.000.000		WIN
🗄 🧰 Roaming Users		Π		192.000.0.007		
E. 📄 Whateaug_froms_Group						

2. Select a client computer and then click **Client Action List** > **Show Installed Softwares**. Installed Softwares window appears displaying list of installed softwares and in the top right corner displays total number of installed softwares.





nstalled Softwares	? He
Computer Name: WI Computer Name: WI Computer Name: WI Computer Name: WI Computer Name: N	Total No.Of Installed Programs: 1
Currently Installed Programs	
Advanced IP Scanner 2.5	
Dropbox	
eScan Corporate - 360	
Google Chrome	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Native Client	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Setup (English)	
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Setup Support Files	
Microsoft SQL Server Browser	
Microsoft SQL Server VSS Writer	
Microsoft Visual C++ 2017 Redistributable (x86) - 14.12.25810	
VMware Tools	

Force Download

The Force Download feature forces a client computer to download Policy Template modifications (if any) and update virus signature database. To activate this feature, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and then click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.



2. Select client computers and then click **Client Action List** > **Force Download**. Client Status window appears displaying the process.

lient Status	🝸 Help
10/ 12:39:50 PM : Processing with group : Sample Group 10/ 12:39:50 PM : Connecting to Computer 10/ 12:39:50 PM : Successfully Execute the Client Downloader on	





Forensic-Port/Communication

This option generates the Forensic report of the service running on certain port during a particular period for analysis. To generate the report, select the client computer and click **Client Action List** > **Forensic Port/Communication** option.

(Client Status
	7/8/2021 12:35:51 PM : Processing with group : Q M 7/8/2021 12:35:51 PM : Connecting to Computer W 7 7/8/2021 12:35:52 PM : Successfully Exported Report on W 7

To view the forensic port, select the client machine and scroll the window to **Forensic Report**. Click on **View** link.



To get the detailed report of the same or download it, click on the specific report under **File Name** column.

11.0.000	,	💲 Refresh 👔 Hel
MM/DD/YYYY Search files in selected Date Range From 06/06/2021	MM/DD/YYYY To 07/06/2021	Search Reset
Delete Report Type Forensics - Port/Communication	Report ¥	
File Name	Created On (Date and time)	Size
eScan Forensics Anti-Malware	4.pdf 22 Jun 2021,11:52 AM	308 KB
eScan Forensics Port	<u>f</u> 22 Jun 2021,11:19 AM	327 KB
Close		

On Demand Scanning

This option lets you scan an eScan installed client computer. To scan a client computer on demand, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the client computer which you want to scan.
- 3. Click **Client Action List** > **On Demand Scanning**. On Demand Scanning window appears.





On Demand Scanning (Forensic-Antimalware Scanni	ng)	👔 Help
Scan Option		
Spyware And Adware	Computer StartUp	
Memory Scan	Registry	
System Folder	Scan network drives	
Scan Local Drives		
Scan System Drive		
Scan Data Drives		
Scan Option		
Scan Archives		
Auto Shut Down After Scan Completion		
Scan Only		
Scan Cancel		

4. Select the preferred scan options and then click **Scan**. The On Demand Scan for selected client computer begins.

Send Message

The Send Message feature lets you send a message to computers. To send message to computers, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and then click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.

🛐 Action List 🔻 🛐 Client Action List 👻 🗘 Refresh Client 🕅 Anti-Theft 🔻 🛐 Select Columns							
🗄 🛅 Managed Computers	0	💻 eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	t Installed 1 - 3 of 3 🗔 (p	age 1 of 1) ⊨ Row		
Policy		Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	<u>User name</u>		
Group Tasks		W.29-55	192.000.000		WIN		
Client Computers (3)		Man-arts	192		WIN		
E - C Roaming Users		MIR-QHDD7	192				
E - Whatsape Access Drug							

2. Select client computers and then click **Client Action List** > **Send Message**. Send Message window appears.

350/350
Send Cancel

3. Enter the message and click **Send**.

The message will be sent to the selected computer.





Outbreak Prevention

Upon virus detection, eScan quarantines the virus and restricts it from spreading across the network. The Outbreak Prevention feature lets you configure policies for the network. <u>Click here</u>, to learn more about deployment and restoring of Outbreak Prevention.

Delete All Quarantine Files

The Delete All Quarantine Files feature lets you delete all quarantine files stored on a computer. To delete all quarantine files on computers, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and under it click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.

🛐 Action List 🗸 🋐 Client Action List 🗸 🏂 Refresh Client 🛣 Anti-Theft 🖌 🋐 Select Columns							
🗄 🗂 Managed Computers	0	💻 eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	t Installed 1 - 3 of 3 🖂 (p	age 1 of 1 ⊨ ⊨ Row		
Policy		Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	<u>User name</u>		
Group Tasks		📕 WARN-11.1	192.000.000		WIN I President		
··· 📕 Client Computers (3)		MON-GUP	192.000.000		WIN CALIFORN		
🖻 🦳 Roaming Users		. W01-QADD7	192. *** * ***				
B. Whateage_terms_Droop							

2. Select client computer and then click **Client Action List** > **Delete All Quarantine Files**. Client Status window appears displaying the progress.

Client Status	🝸 Help
10/1/2019 12:53:20 PM : Processing with group : Sample Group 10/1/2019 12:53:20 PM : Connecting to Computer 10/1/2019 12:53:20 PM : Quarantine files successfully deleted	

Create OTP

The password protection restricts user access from violating a security policy deployed in a network. For example, the administrator has deployed a security policy to block all USB devices, but a user needs USB access for a genuine reason. In such situation, One Time Password (OTP) can be generated to disable USB block policy on specific computer. The administrator can define policy disable duration ranging from 10 minutes to an hour without violating existing policy.

Generating an OTP

To generate an OTP, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the Managed Computers screen, select the client computer for which you want to generate the OTP.
- 2. Click **Client Action List** > **Create OTP**. Password Generator window appears.





e One Time Password	
Computer Name:*	COMP168
Valid for:*	10 mins 💙
Select Option	
File Anti-Virus	Allow to Change Ip
Firewall	EPS App Control
_	🗌 Mail Anti-Virus & Anti-Spam
New Password	
Password :	

- 3. In the **Valid for** drop-down, select the preferred duration to bypass the protection module.
- 4. In **Select Option** section, select the module you want to disable.
- 5. Click Generate Password.

An OTP will be generated and displayed in **Password** field.

e One Time Password	
Computer Name:*	COMFLEE
Valid for:*	20 mins 🗸
Select Option	
File Anti-Virus	Allow to Change Ip
Firewall	EPS App Control
EPS USB	Mail Anti-Virus & Anti-Spam
DLP	
- New Password	
Password :	7CI6 Bound on a la Password is case-sensitive

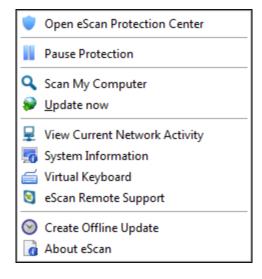




Entering an OTP

To enter an OTP, follow the steps given below:

In the Taskbar, right-click the eScan icon
 An option list appears.



2. Click Pause Protection.

eScan Protection Center window appears.

10	X
1C	eScan Protection Center
Enter eScan Administrator Password	
1	
Duration	
15 minutes 👻	
	OK Cancel

- 3. Enter an OTP in the field.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The selected module will be disabled for set duration.

Pause Protection

The Pause Protection feature lets you pause the protection for computers. To pause the protection for computers, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and then click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.





Action List - 🛐 Client Action List - 🗘 Refresh Client	🗞 Ant	ii-Theft 🔻 🗻 Select C	olumns		
🗄 🧰 Managed Computers	0	💻 eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	ot Installed 1 - 3 of 3 1∢ ∢ p	age 1 of 1 ⊨ ⊨∣ Rov
Policy		Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	<u>User name</u>
📆 Group Tasks		WATER- 11.1	192.000.000		WIN I President
Client Computers (3)		MINI-GUP	192.000.000		WIN
🗄 🧰 Roaming Users			192.588.6.817		
🗄 🗂 Whateage_Accase_Droug					

2. Select client computers and then click **Client Action List** > **Pause Protection**. Client Status window appears displaying the progress.

7/8/2021	12:53:15 PM : Processing with group : Q M
7/8/2021	12:53:15 PM : Connecting to Computer W
7/8/2021	12:53:15 PM : Successfully Paused Protection on W

Resume Protection

The Resume Protection feature lets you resume protection for computers whose protection is paused. To resume protection for computers, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group and then click **Client Computers**. The right pane displays the list of computers in the group and their detailed information.

🛐 Action List 🗸 🏹 Client Action List 🗸 🧳 Refresh Client	🚴 An	ti-Theft 🔻 🗻 Select (columns		
🗄 🛅 Managed Computers	0	💻 eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	t Installed 1 - 3 of 3 1∢ (p	age 1 of 1 ⊨ ⊨∣ Rov
Policy		Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	<u>User name</u>
Group Tasks		WAT290-51.5	192.000.000		WIN BU Franklants
Client Computers (3)		MIN-GUP	192.000.040		WIN CALFARM
E Roaming Users		- W291-Q#2027	192.008.0.017		
E. Vialage, Access, Droop			1	1	

2. Select client computers and then click **Client Action List** > **Resume Protection**. Client Status window appears displaying the progress.

7/8/2021 12:54:31 PM : Processing with group : Q
7/8/2021 12:54:31 PM : Connecting to Computer W 7
7/8/2021 12:54:31 PM : Successfully Resumed Protection on W

Properties of Selected Computer

To view the properties of a selected computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select a computer.
- Click Client Action List > Properties.
 Properties window appears displaying details.





operties	2	He
nae Gr		
eneral		
Computer Name	WIN-QA	
IP Address	192.168.0.117	
User name	WIN-QA\ADMINISTRATOR	
Operating System	Windows 8.1 Professional 64-bit	
V-Status		
Anti-Virus Installed	Installed (eScan elite for Business)	
Version	22.0.1400.2520	
Installed Directory	C:\Program Files (x86)\eScan	
Update Server	www.microworldsystems.com/sendinfo/	
Last Update	Unknown	
rotection		
File Anti-Virus	Enabled	
Mail Anti-Virus	Disabled	
Anti-Spam	Disabled	
Web Protection	Disabled	
Firewall	Disabled (Allow All)	
Endpoint Security	Enabled	

O NOTE

If multiple computers are selected, the **Properties** option will be disabled.





Anti-Theft

The Anti-Theft module lets you remotely locate and lock a device. This module also lets you wipe the data available on a device.

🛐 Action List 🗸 🋐 Client Action List 👻 🗘 Refresh Client 🥈	👌 Anti	-Theft 🔻 🧻 Select C	columns			
🗄 💼 Managed Computers	0	eScan Installed	🔿 📃 eScan No	ot Installed 1 - 3 of 3 i∢ ∢ p	age 1 of 1 ⊨ ⊨∣ Rom	ws per page: 10 🗸
Policy		Computer Name	IP Address	IP Address of the connection	<u>User name</u>	Local Administrator User
Group Tasks		WERE L	192.		WIN	Kraiter, Frankard
Client Computers (3) Roaming Users		📕 wawaus	192.000.040		WIN CAPAGE	A stratterings
		MIN QROOT	192.			
🗄 🦳 Whateage_terms_Droug						
	•					
		Protected		Not Installed / Critical	📃 Unkno	own status
L						

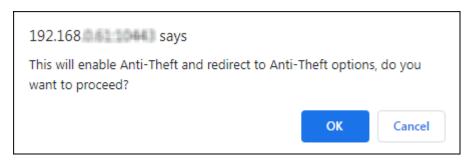
Anti-Theft Options

To add computers in an Anti-theft, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the desired computers to add in Anti-theft Portal.
- 3. Click Anti-Theft > Anti-Theft Options.
- 4. Enter the **Email ID** then Click **OK**. The computer will add in Anti-Theft Portal.

Anti-Theft	
Following is Email Id which will be use to Enable Anti-Theft on client Computer, If you want you can change Email Id. Email ID :	
Ok Cancel	

A confirmation prompt appears.



5. Click OK.

This will redirect to Anti-Theft options.





y eScan			_
Locate Locate View Details C	9		
ion Features			– Data wipe

Anti-Theft Portal

It will display the anti-theft features that you can activate in case your system is lost or stolen.

ACTORNEL PROPERTY	Devi	ce Lost Reset	Configure Data wipe				
fy eScan							-
Locate	9						
Locate View Details ᄋ							
tion Features							-
Lock		Scream	\square	Alert		Data wipe	
Lock			Scream w Details 🔿		Alert View Details ᢒ		wipe etails 🗿

In case of loss or theft, click on the system name that has been lost or stolen, the status bar under it will display the system name again and when it was last seen.

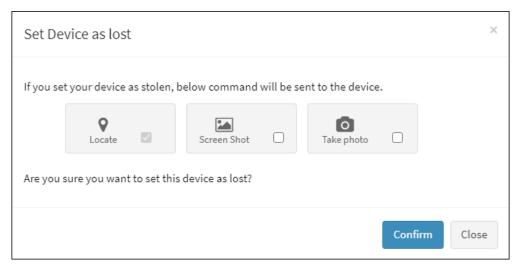
1. Click **Device Lost** and this will allow you to enable the features locate, screenshot and take photo by selecting the desired options.

WALIDHALD-JIDHAR		Device Lost	Reset	Configure Data wipe	
My eScan					-
Locate	0				
Locate View Detail	s 🔁				





2. Click **Confirm** to confirm that your system has been lost and to execute the commands Locate, Screenshot, and Camera.

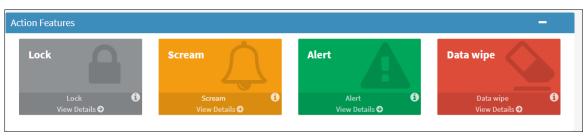


- Locate: This option will allow you to locate the system in case of loss/theft. Click on the Locate option on the anti-theft portal and the last known location of the system will be displayed on the map. Procedure to Locate the system:
 - 1) Click **Locate**, the status will change to Request Pending; the status will be updated as soon as the system is synced with the server. Request pending indicates that your request to locate the system is in progress.
 - 2) View Details displays the Last Location of your system on a map. It also shows details of last two successful executions of the Locate command.
- **Screenshot**: This option will take a screen shot of the system whenever it is synced to the server.
 - 1) Click **Screenshot**, the status will change to Request Pending; the status will be updated as soon as the system is synced with the server. Request pending indicates that your request to take a screenshot is in progress.
 - 2) **View Details** displays the last two screenshots from the successful execution of the screenshot command.
- **Take Photo**: This option will allow you to take a snapshot of the current user of the system from the webcam on clicking the **Camera** option on the anti-theft portal.
 - 1) Click **Camera**, the status will change to Request Pending; the status will be updated as soon as the system is synced with the server. Request pending indicates that your request to take a snapshot is in progress.
 - 2) View Details displays the last two snapshots taken from your system.

Click **Reset** to reset the **Action Features** on the system; these actions can be performed on the system when it has been lost or stolen.







- Lock: The Lock feature will block the system from any further access. You will have to unblock the system by entering the pin provided on the anti-theft portal. On the anti-theft portal, select your System Alias name and then click Lock to remotely block your system, to unblock your system you will have to enter the Secret Code provided at the time of executing the lock command.
- Scream: Scream will allow you to raise a loud alarm on the system; this will allow you to trace the system if it is in the vicinity. Click Scream option to remotely raise a loud alarm on your system.
- Alert: This option will allow you to send an alert message (up to 200 characters) to the lost system. This alert message will be displayed on the screen; you can write and send any message for example: Request a call back or send your address or any kind of message to the current holder of your system. With this option there will be higher chance of your lost system being recovred. Click Alert option to remotely send a message to your lost system. Type in your message in the send message section and click Confirm.
- **Data wipe**: The Data Wipe feature will delete all the selected files and folders that have been added to the list to be deleted from the portal. Click **Data Wipe** option to remotely wipe all the selected files and folders or only delete the cookies and click **Confirm**. Select the **Delete Cookies** checkbox to delete cookies or select the **Data wipe** checkbox to wipe the data and click on **Confirm**.

Disable Anti-Theft

To Disable Anti-Theft, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the desired computers to disable Anti-theft Portal.
- 3. Click Anti-Theft > Disable Anti-Theft

The Anti-Theft will be disable on selected computer.

Refresh Client

To refresh the status of any client computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Under any group, click **Client Computers**. A list of computers appears on the right pane.
- 2. Select a computer.
- 3. Click **Refresh Client**.

The Client will be refreshed.





Understanding the eScan Client Protection Status

Protected	This status is displayed when the File anti-virus module of eScan Client is enabled and eScan was updated in last 2 days.
Not Installed / Critical	This status is displayed when either eScan is not installed on any computer or File AV/Real Time Protection is disabled.
Unknown status	This status is displayed when communication is broken between Server and Client due to unknown reason.
🔶 Update Agent	This status is displayed when a computer is defined as an Update Agent for the group.
RMM	This status is displayed when a computer is added to RMM license and the computer can be connected via RMM service.
Two-FA	This status is displayed when a computer is added to 2FA license.
🛃 DLP	This status is displayed when a computer is added to DLP license.
C Anti-Theft	This status is displayed when a computer is added to Anti-Theft Portal.





Select Columns

You can customize the view regarding the details of devices, according to the requirement.

Select All Columns	
Computer Name	✔ IP Address
IP Address of the connection	Vser name
Local Administrator User(s)	🗸 eScan Status
Version	Last Connection
Installed Directory	✔ Last Update
🗹 Anti-Spam	✓ Mail Anti-Virus
✓ Web Protection	Endpoint Security
✓ Firewall	Monitor Status
✔ Update Server	Client OS
✓ Status	Installation Status
Last Policy Applied	Last Policy Applied Time
✔ Last eBackup Status	✓ Forensic Report
Apply Cancel]
hppin	

To configure this, select the computer and click **Select/Add Columns** option. You can select and configure the required columns accordingly.





Policy Template

This button allows you to add different security baseline policies for specific computer or group.

Managing Policies

With the policies you can define rule sets for all modules of eScan client to be implemented on the Managed Computer groups. The security policies can be implemented for Windows computers connected to the network.

Defining Policies Windows computers

On Windows OS policies can be defined for following eScan Client modules:

File Anti-virus

The File Anti-Virus module scans all the existing files and folders for any infection. It also lets you report/disinfect/quarantine/delete infected objects. Moreover, it saves a copy of report file for future reference, and displays attention messages. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Mail Anti-Virus

The Mail Anti-Virus module scans all the incoming emails. It scans the emails by breaking it into three sections the header, subject and the body. After scanning, the module combines the sections and sends it to your mailbox. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Anti-Spam

The Anti-Spam module blocks spam emails by checking the content of outgoing and incoming mails and quarantines advertisement emails. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Web Protection

The Web Protection module lets you block websites. You can allow/block websites on time-based access restriction. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Firewall

The Firewall module lets you put up a restriction to incoming and outgoing traffic and hacking. You can define the firewall settings here. You can define the IP range, permitted applications, trusted MAC addresses, and local IP addresses. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Endpoint Security

The Endpoint Security module monitors the application on client computers. It allows/ restricts USB, Block list, White list, and defines time restrictions for applications. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Privacy Control

The Privacy Control module lets you schedule an auto-erase of your cache, ActiveX, cookies, plugins, and history. You can also secure delete your files and folders where the files will be deleted directly without any traces. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Administrator Password

Administrator Password lets you create and change password for administrative login of eScan protection center and Two-Factor Authentication. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

ODS/Schedule Scan

ODS/Schedule Scan provides you with various options like – checking for viruses, and making settings for creating logs and receiving alerts. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.





MWL Inclusion List

Inclusion List contains the name of all executable files which will bind itself to MWTSP.DLL. All other files are excluded. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

MWL Exclusion List

MWL Exclusion List contains the name of all executable files which will not bind itself to MWTSP.DLL. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Notifications & Events

Notifications & Events allows to allow/restrict the alerts that are send to admin in case of any suspicious activity or events. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Schedule Update

Schedule Update policy lets you schedule eScan database updates. To learn more, click here.

Tools

Tools policy let you configure RMM Settings. To learn more, click here.

Creating Policy Template for a group/specific computer

To create a Policy template for a group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click Managed Computers.
- 2. Select the desired group and then click **Policy Template**. Policy Template window appears.

Policy Templates				E Refresh 👔 Helf
🕂 New Template 📝 Prop	erties Parent Policy 👘 De	lete 📝 Assign to Group(s)	Assign to Computer(s)	y Template Export To 💙
Name of Template	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)
	Jun 19 2021 06:07:27 PM	Jun 29 2021 01:01:43 PM	Qre_TERM	
SAMPLES	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Samples_Team	

3. Click New Template.

New Templates screen appears displaying modules for Windows computers.





New Template			🔋 Help
Select Rule-Sets			
Enter Template Name:*			
File Anti-Virus Assign From Select Policy	Edit	Mail Anti-Virus Edit Assign From Select Policy	
Anti-Spam Assign From Select Policy	Edit	Web Protection Edit Assign From Select Policy	
FireWall Assign From Select Policy	Edit	EndPoint Security Edit Assign From Select Policy	
Privacy Control Assign From Select Policy	Edit		
Administrator Password	Edit	ODS/Schedule Scan	

- 4. Enter name for Template.
- 5. To edit a module, select it and then click **Edit**.
- 6. Make a changes and Click **Save**.

The Policy Template will be saved.





Configuring eScan Policies for Windows Computers

Each module of a policy template can be further edited to meet your requirements.

File Anti-Virus

File Anti-Virus module displays following tabs:

- Objects
- Options
- Blocked Files
- Folder Protection
- File Rights
- TSPM

Objects

Objects	Options	Block Files	Folder Protection	File Rights	TSPM
Actions i	n case of virus	detection			
- O <u>r</u>	eport only				
± 🔘 🖸	isinfect				
- Og	uarantine obje	act			
- O <u>D</u>	elete object				
🗹 <u>s</u>	can local remo	vable disk drives			
	can local hard				
	can network d				
	files of followi				
÷ 🔽 E	xclude by mas	k			
	ot a Virus List				
	xclude Files / F				
	can compound				
O e	nable code ana	alyser			
_					

Actions in case of virus detection

This section lists the different actions that File Anti-Virus can perform when it detects virus infection.

Report Only

Upon virus detection, eScan will only report the virus and won't take any action.

Disinfect [Default]

Tries to disinfect the detected object and If disinfection is impossible it will **Quarantine Object** or **Delete Object**. By default, the quarantined files are saved in **C:\Program Files\eScan\Infected**





folder. You can select the **Make backup file before disinfection** option if you would like to make a backup of the files before they are disinfected.

Scan local removable disk drives [Default]

Select this option if you want eScan to scan all the local removable drives attached to the computer.

Scan local hard disk drives [Default]

Select this option if you want eScan to scan all the local hard drives installed on the computer.

Scan network drives [Default]

Select this option if you want eScan to scan all the network drives, including mapped folders and drives connected to the computer.

Scan files of following types

Select this option if you want eScan to scan all files, only infectable files, and files by extension (Scan by mask). eScan provides you a list of default files and file types that it scans by extension. You can add more items to this list or remove items as per your requirement by clicking **Add/Delete**.

Exclude by mask [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want File Anti-Virus monitor to exclude all the objects in the Exclude by mask list during real-time monitoring or scanning. You can add/delete a file or a particular file extension by clicking **Add/Delete**.

Not a virus list [Default]

File Anti-Virus is capable of detecting riskware. Riskware refers to software originally not intended to be malicious but somehow can pose as a security risk to critical operating system functions. You can add the names of riskware, such as remote admin software, to the riskware list in the **Not a virus list** dialog box by clicking **Add/Delete** if you are certain that they are not malicious. The riskware list is empty by default.

Exclude Files/Folders [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want File Anti-Virus to exclude all the listed files, folders, and sub folders while it is monitoring or scanning folders. The files/folders added to this list will be excluded from real-time scan as well as on demand scan. You can add or delete files/folders from the list by clicking **Add/Delete**.

Scan compound objects [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to scan archives and packed files during scan operations. By default, Packed option is selected.

Enable code analyzer

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to scan your computer for suspicious objects or unknown infections by using the heuristic analyzer. After selection, File Anti-Virus not only scans and detects infected objects, but also checks for suspicious files stored on computer.





Options

The Options tab lets you configure following options:

_					_
Objects	Options	Block Files	Folder Protection	File Rights	TSPM
Save	e report file				
	how pack info i	n the report			
	how clean obje	<u>ct info in the rep</u>	ort		
	imit size to (KB				
	nable Auto bac				
	imit file size to				
	roactive Behavi				
	isplay attention				
	nable Malware				
_ <u>∽</u> <u>∈</u>	nable Ransomv	are Protection			

Save report file [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to save the reports generated by the File Anti-Virus module. The report file logs information about the scanned files and the action taken by File Anti-Virus when an infected file was found during the scan.

Show pack info in the report [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want File Anti-Virus to add information regarding scanned compressed files, such as .zip and .rar files to the Monvir.log file.

Show clean object info in the report

Select this checkbox if you want File Anti-Virus to add information regarding uninfected files found during a scan operation to the Monvir.log file. You can select this option to find out which files are not infected.

Limit size to (Kb) (avpM.rpt)

Select this checkbox if you want File Anti-Virus to limit the size of the Monvir.log file and avpM.rpt file. To modify the limit, enter the log file size in given textbox.

Enable Auto backup/Restore [Default]

Selecting this checkbox lets you back up the critical files of the Windows® operating system and then automatically restores the clean files when eScan finds an infection in any of the system files that cannot be disinfected. You can do the following settings:





Do not backup files above size (KB)

This option lets you prevent File Anti-Virus from creating backup of files that are larger than the file size that you have specified. The default value is 32768 kb.

Minimum disk space (MB)

The Auto-backup feature will first check for the minimum available space limit defined for a hard disk drive. If the minimum defined space is available then only the Auto-backup feature will work, if not it will stop without notifying. You can allot the Minimum disk space to be checked from this option. By default, the minimum disk space is 500 MB.

Limit file size to (KB) [Default]

This checkbox lets you set a limit size for the objects or files to be scanned. The default value is set to 20480 Kb.

Proactive Behavior Monitor [Default]

Selecting this checkbox enables File Anti-Virus to monitor the computer for suspicious applications/programs and block them on a real-time basis when they try to execute. Selecting this checkbox enables below options to configure:

• Ask user for action

This option allows user to receive the confirmation prompt before Proactive Behavior Monitor blocks the suspicious application/program. Select **Yes** to proceed with the blocking of application and **No** to cancel the blocking.

- White List Whitelisting allows you mark the files in the database that you want to exclude from being blocked. To whitelist a file/folder, click Whitelist and then click Add from DB.
- **Block List** Block listing allows to you mark the files from the white list that should be blocked.

Whitelist Option

Whitelisting lets you mark the files in the database that you want to exclude from being blocked. To whitelist a file/folder, click **Whitelist** and then click **Add from DB**.

Display attention messages [Default]

When this option is selected, eScan displays an alert consisting the path and name of the infected object and the action taken by the File Anti-Virus module.

Enable Malware URL Filter [Default]

This option lets you enable a Malware URL filter where eScan blocks all URLs that are suspected to be malwares. You can exclude specific websites by whitelisting them from the eScan pop up displayed when you try to access the site.

Enable Ransomware Protection [Default]

This option lets you enable Ransomware Protection on the system where eScan blocks any suspected ransomware activities performed on system. With the technology called PBAE (Proactive Behavioral Analysis Engine) eScan monitors the activity of all processes on the local computer and when it encounters any activity or behavior that matches a ransomware, it raises a red flag and blocks the process.





Block Files

The Block Files tab lets you configure settings for preventing executables and files, such as autorun.inf, on network drives, USB drives, and fixed drives from accessing your computer.

ects Options Block Fil	les Folder Protection File Rights TSPM
Disable Autoplay on USB and Fix	
Deny access of executables or	
Iser defined whitelist	
File Name	Add
	Delete RemoveA
Deny access of executables fr ser defined whitelist Folder Name	rom Network Include Subfolder Add Delete RemoveA
Quarantine Access-denied file:	
Deny Access of following files Quarantine Access-denied files File Name 96sysdir%*.EXE@	
Quarantine Access-denied file	Add Delete

Disable AutoPlay on USB and Fixed Drives [Default]

Selecting this option will disable AutoPlay when a USB/Fixed Drive is connected.

Deny access of executables on USB Drives

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to prevent executables stored on USB drives from being accessed.

Deny access of executables from Network

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to prevent executables on the client computer from being accessed from the network.

User defined whitelist

This option is enabled after selecting the **Deny access of executable from Network** checkbox. You can use this option to enter the folders that need to be whitelisted so that executables can be accessed in the network from the folders mentioned under this list. To add files, click **Add**.

Add Folder			 	
C:\Documents an	d Settings\Remya\I	My Documents		
🗹 Include Subf	older			
Add Cancel				





Enter the complete path of the folder to be whitelisted on the client systems. You can either whitelist the parent folder only or select the **Include subfolder** option to whitelist the subfolders as well.

Deny Access of following files [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to prevent the files in the list from running on the computers.

Quarantine Access-denied files

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to quarantine files to which access is denied.

- 1. You can prevent specific files from running on the eScan client computer by adding them to the **Block Files** list. By default, this list contains the value %sysdir%*.EXE@. Click Add.
- 2. Enter the full name of the file to be blocked from execution on the client systems.

Folder Protection

The Folder Protection tab lets you protect specific folders from being modified or deleted by adding them to the **Folder Protection** list. It lets you configure the following setting:

e Anti-Virus	5					?	H
Objects	Options Bloc	k Files Folde	r Protection	File Rights	тярм		_
🗹 Prote	ct files in following fo	olders from modifica	tion and deletion				
E	Folder Name		<u>Include Subfol</u>	<u>ler</u>		Add Delete RemoveAll	
Default	Advanced Se	tting OK	Ca	ncel			

Protect files in following folders from modification and deletion [Default]

Selecting this checkbox enables File Anti-Virus module to protect files in specific folders from being modified or deleted on the client systems. Click **Add**. Enter the complete path of the folder to be protected on the client systems. You can either protect the parent folder only or select the **Include subfolder** option to protect the subfolders as well.





File Rights

The File Rights tab restricts or allows for remote or local users from modifying folders, subfolders, files or files with certain extensions.

ects Options Block Files	Folder Protection File Rights T	БРМ	
🗌 Enable eScan Remote File Rights			
Do not allow remote users to modify	the following local files		
File / Folder Name	Include Subfolder	Add	
*.EXE		Delete	-
П *.сом			2401
		•	
Allow Modification for following Files			
File / Folder Name	Include Subfolder	Add Delete	
○ %TEMP%\	v	Remove	-
WINDIR%\TEMP\	V	-	
Enable eScan Local File Rights			
Do not allow local users to modify the	-	Add	
<u>File / Folder Name</u>	Include Subfolder	Delete	2
			l F

Enable eScan Remote File Rights

Select this checkbox to allow/restrict the remote users to make any modifications to the files and folders.

Do not allow remote users to modify the following local files

The files/folders added to this list cannot be modified by the remote users.

Allow modification for following files

The files added to this list can be modified by the remote user.

Enable eScan Local File Rights

Select this checkbox to allow/restrict the local users to make any modifications to the files/folders.

Do not allow local users to modify the following files

The files/folders added to this list cannot be modified by the local users.

Allow Modification for following Files

The files/folders added to this list can be modified by the local users.





TSPM

eScan's Terminal Services Protection Module (TSPM) detects brute force attempts, identifies suspicious IP addresses/hosts and blocks any access attempts from them to prevent future attacks. The IP addresses and hosts from the attacks are banned from initiating any further connections to the system. It also detects and stops attempts of attackers who try to uninstall security applications from systems and alerts administrator about the preventive measures initiated by TSPM.

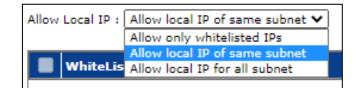
Enable Terminal Service Protection Module	
Allow Local IP : Allow local IP of same subnet 🗸	
WhiteListed IPs	Add Delete
Block All Foreign IP	
Not Allowed List :	
NA List	Add Delete
FreeRDP Rdesktop	RemoveAll
Windows7	•
RDP blocked from foreign country	
Whitelist Foreign Country for RDP : (e.g. India or Tunisia or United States)	
Country Names	Add
	RemoveAll
Show RDP block alert	

Enable Terminal Service Protection Module [Default]

Select this checkbox to activate TSPM module.

Allow Local IP

This dropdown menu has following options:



• Allow only whitelisted IPs: Select this option to allow only whitelisted IPs to connect to the endpoints.





To add a list of IP addresses to be excluded from being blocked by TSPM, click **Add**. Add IP window appears.

IP Address*:	

Enter the IP address and then click OK.

- To delete the IP address from list, select the IP address and click Delete.
 - **Block All Non Whitelisted IPs**: After selecting **Allow only whitelisted** option, this will be available. Select this option to block all IPs other than the whitelisted one.
- Allow local IP of same subnet [Default]: Select this option to allow the local IPs that belongs to same subnet.
- Allow local IP for all subnet: Select this option to allow the local IPs of all subnet in the network.

Block All Foreign IP

Select this checkbox to block all the foreign IP address from communicating from the endpoint within the network.

Not Allowed List

This option has pre-defined username that are not allowed to establish connection (via RDP) with the endpoints in the network.

To add custom-defined username, enter the username and then click **Add**. To delete the username from pre-defined list, select the name and click **Delete**. To remove all the usernames from list at once, click **Remove All**.

RDP blocked from foreign country [Default]

This checkbox blocks all the RDP connection attempts from the foreign country.

Whitelist Foreign Country for RDP: (e.g. India or Tunisia or United States)

This option allows to whitelist the country names, so that RDP connections from those countries can be allowed.

Show RDP block alert [Default]

This checkbox allows eScan to alert the user in case of any RDP connection is blocked.

Block brute force attack [Default]

This checkbox allows to block the connection in case of any brute force attack.

Click **Default** to apply default settings done during eScan installation. It loads and resets **NOTE** the values to the default settings.





Advanced Settings

Clicking Advanced Settings lets you configure advanced settings for console.

	Name	Value
\Box	Disable Reload Password (2=Disable/1=Enable)	1 🗸
0	Display Print Job events	1 ¥
	IPAddress Change Allowed (2=Disable/1=Enable)	1 🌱
	Enable Time Syncronization	1 🗸
0	Clear Quarantine folder after Days specified	28
	Clear Quarantine Folder after Size Limit specified in MB	0
0	Exclude System PID from Scanning	0 🗸
0	Disable Virtual Key Board Shortcut key	0 🗸
0	Show eScan Tray Menu	1 🗸
0	Show eScan Tray Icon	1 🗸
0	Show eScan Desktop Protection Icon	1 🗸
	Enable eScan Remote Support in Non-Administrator mode	0 🗸
	Define Virus Alert Time (in seconds)	20

Disable Reload Password (2=Disable/1=Enable)

This option lets you enable or disable password for reloading eScan. After enabling, the user will be asked to enter reload password if user attempts to reload eScan. This is the administrator password for eScan Protection Center.

Display Print Job events (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you capture events for the Print Jobs from Managed Computers.

IP Address Change Allowed (2 = Disable/1 = Enable)

This option lets you enable/disable IP Address Change by the user on their computer.

Enable Time Synchronization (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you enable/disable time synchronization with internet. Active internet connection is mandatory for this feature.

Clear Quarantine folder after Days specified

This option lets you specify number of days after which the Quarantine folder should be cleared on Managed Computers.

Clear Quarantine Folder after Size Limit specified in MB

This option lets you specify size limit for the Quarantine folder. If the defined size limit exceeds, the Quarantine folder will be cleared on Managed Computers.





Exclude System PID from Scanning (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you exclude system process ID (Microsoft assigned System PIDs) from scanning on Managed Computers.

Disable Virtual Key Board Shortcut key (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you disable shortcut keys for using Virtual Keyboard on Managed Computers.

Show eScan Tray Menu (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you hide or show eScan Tray Menu on Managed Computers.

Show eScan Tray Icon (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you hide or show eScan Tray Icon on Managed Computers.

Show eScan Desktop Protection Icon (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you hide or show eScan Protection icon on Managed Computers.

Enable eScan Remote Support in Non-Administrator mode (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you enable/disable eScan Remote Support in Non-Administrator Mode. eScan will not prompt for entering Administrator Password to start eScan Remote Support from Managed Computers.

Define Virus Alert Time (in seconds)

This option lets you define time period in seconds to display Virus Alert on Managed Computers.

Show Malware URL Warning (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you show or hide Malware URL warning messages on Managed Computers.

Protect Windows Hosts File (1 = Allow/0 = Block)

Use this option to Allow/Block modifications to Windows Host Files.

Search for HTML Scripts (1 = Allow/0 = Block)

Use this option to Allow/Block search for html script (infection) in files. This option will have impact on system performance.

Show Network Executable block alert (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you show/hide Network executable block alerts on Managed Computers.

Show USB Executable Block Alert (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you show/hide USB executable block alerts on Managed Computers.

Show eScan Tray Icon on Terminal Client (1 = Show/0 = Hide)

This option lets you show/hide eScan Tray Icon on Terminal Clients on Managed Computers.

Enable eScan Self Protection (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable eScan Self Protection on Managed Computers, if this feature is enabled, no changes or modifications can be made in any eScan File.

Enable eScan Registry Protection (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable eScan Registry Protection. User cannot make changes in protected registry entries if it is enabled on Managed Computers.

Enable backup of DLL files (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable backup of DLL files on Managed Computers.





Integrate Server Service dependency with Real-time monitor (**1** = **Enable**/**0** = **Disable**) This option lets you Integrate Server Service dependency with real-time monitor.

Send Installed Software Events (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) This option lets you receive Installed Software Events from Managed Computers.

Enable Winsock Protection (Require Restart) (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) This option lets you Enable/Disable protection at the Winsock Layer.

Enable Cloud (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable eScan Cloud Security Protection on Managed Computers.

Enable Cloud Scanning (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable Cloud Scanning on Managed Computers.

Remove LNK (Real-Time) (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable Removal of LNK on real-time basis.

Whitelisted AutoConfigURL

This option lets you whitelist AutoConfigURLs. Enter comma separated URLs that need to be whitelisted.

Disable Add-ons/Extension blocking (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option disables Add-ons and Extension blocking.

Include files to scan for archive (Eg: abc*.exe)

This option lets you add file types that needs to be when archive scanning enabled.

Block Date-Time Modification (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option lets you block the modification of the system date and time.

Allow CMD-Registry for Date-Time blocking (Depends upon Block Date-Time Modification) (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you block date-time modification from the CMD-Registry.

Domain list for exclusion of Host file scanning (e.g. abc.mwti)

Selecting this option lets you add the list of domains to be excluded from host file scanning.

Disable Pause Protection and Open Protection center on Right Click (Set 192 for disable)

This option disables Pause Protection and Open Protection center on Right Click if you set it to 192.

Enable Share Access Control (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

It enables Share Access Control. Network Shares ReadOnly Access and Network Shares NoAccess options will work only if this option is selected.

Only if it is enabled the setting "NetworkSharesReadOnlyAccess" and "NOTE "NetworkSharesNoAccess" will be referred.

List of comma-separated servers and/or shares and/or wildcards which needs to be given NO ACCESS e.g. \\192.168.1.1\temp or \\192.168.1.1\temp*.doc or *.doc (Work only when ''Enable Share Access Control'' is set)

Selecting this option lets you add the List of comma-separated servers and/or shares and/or wildcards that should not be accessible.





List of comma-separated servers and/or shares and/or wildcards which needs to be given READ ONLY ACCESS e.g. \\192.168.1.1\temp or \\192.168.1.1\temp*.doc or *.doc (Work only when ''Enable Share Access Control'' is set)

Selecting this option lets you add the List of comma-separated servers and/or shares and/or wildcards that should be given only view access and not be editable.

Whitelist IP Address (Depends on IP Address Change Allowed) (E.G 192.168.1.* You can put comma-separated list)

Selecting this option lets you add the list of IP addresses separated by commas to whitelist them.

Block Access to Control Panel (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you block the user from accessing the control panel.

Disable COPY/PASTE (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you disable Copy/Paste actions.

Enable logging of sharing activity from suspected malware system (WSmbFilt.log on client system) (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Enabling this option directs eScan to log any sharing activity performed by suspected malware system. By default, this feature is enabled.

PowerShell Exclusion list

Selecting this option lets you add a PowerShell script file path manually to exclude files and folders from real-time scan.

Allow Uninstallers (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you enable/disable use of third party uninstallers.

Block Renaming of Hostname (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you enable/disable block Hostname renaming.

Restricted Environment enabled (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you enable/disable restrict environment settings.

Block eternal blue (wannacry) exploits (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you block eternal blue (wannacry) exploits. By default, this option is enabled.

Enable Winsock Protection (Require Restart) (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you restarts Winsock protection. By default, this option is enabled.

Block Gmail (Except corporate ones) (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you enable/disable block Gmail.

Block Registry Editor (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you enable/disable block Registry Editor.

Block PowerShell (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you enable/disable block PowerShell.

Block MS Office (0 = Disable /1-All/2-All except Outlook) Selecting this option lets you enable/disable block MS Office.





Mail Antivirus

Mail Anti-Virus is a part of the Protection feature of eScan. This module scans all incoming and outgoing emails for viruses, spyware, adware, and other malicious objects. It lets you send virus warnings to client computers on the Mail Anti-Virus activities. By default, Mail Anti-Virus scans only the incoming emails and attachments, but you can configure it to scan outgoing emails and attachments as well. Moreover, it lets you notify the sender or system administrator whenever you receive an infected email or attachment. This page provides you with options for configuring the module.

Mail Antivirus Settings ? • Start ○ Stop	Help
Scan Options Block Attachments Types Add PRETTY*.EXE Add NAVI*.EXE Delete KAK.HTA FIX200*.EXE MINE.* Advanced V2K.EXE Advanced Port Settings Port Settings for eMail Outgoing Mail(SMTP) 25 25	
Incoming Mail(POP3) 110 Scan Outgoing Mails	
Default Ok Cancel	

Scan Options

This tab lets you select the emails to be scanned and action that should be performed when a security threat is encountered during a scan operation. This tab lets you configure following settings:

Block Attachments Types

This section provides you with a predefined list of file types that are often used by virus writers to embed viruses. Any email attachment having an extension included in this list will be blocked or deleted by eScan at the gateway level. You can add file extensions to this list as per your requirement. As a best practice, you should avoid deleting the file extensions that are present in the **Block Attachments Types** list by default. You can also configure advanced settings required to scan emails for malicious code.

Action

This section lets you configure the actions to be performed on infected emails. These operations are as follows:

Disinfect [Default]

Select this option if you want Mail Anti-Virus to disinfect infected emails or attachments.





Delete

Select this option if you want Mail Anti-Virus to delete infected emails or attachments.

Quarantine Infected Files [Default]

Select this option if you want Mail Anti-Virus to quarantine infected emails or attachments. The default path for storing quarantined emails or attachments is – C:\Program Files\eScan\QUARANT. However, you can specify a different path for storing quarantined files, if required.

Port Settings for email

You can also specify the ports for incoming and outgoing emails so that eScan can scan the emails sent or received through those ports.

Outgoing Mail (SMTP) [Default: 25]

You need to specify a port number for SMTP.

Incoming Mail (POP3) [Default: 110]

You need to specify a port number for POP3.

Scan Outgoing Mails

Select this checkbox if you want Mail Anti-Virus to scan outgoing emails as well.

Click **Default** to apply default settings done during eScan installation. It loads and resetsNOTE the values to the default settings.

Advanced

Clicking **Advanced** tab displays Advanced Scan Options dialog box. This dialog box lets you configure the following advanced scanning options:

Advanced Scan Options	
	-
Delete all Attachments in eMail if Disinfection is not possible	
Delete entire eMail if Disinfection is not possible	
Delete entire eMail if any Virus is found	
Quarantine Blocked Attachments	
Delete entire eMail if any Blocked Attchement is found	
Quarantine eMail if Attachments are not Scanned	
Quarantine Attachments if they are Scanned	
Exclude Attchements (White List)	
Add	
Delete	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Save Cancel	

Delete all Attachment in email if disinfection is not possible

Select this option to delete all the email attachments that cannot be cleaned.





Delete entire email if disinfection is not possible [Default]

Select this option to delete the entire email if any attachment cannot be cleaned.

Delete entire email if any virus is found

Select this option to delete the entire email if any virus is found in the email or the attachment is infected.

Quarantine blocked Attachments [Default]

Select this option to quarantine the attachment if it bears extension blocked by eScan.

Delete entire email if any blocked attachment is found [Default]

Select this option to delete an email if it contains an attachment with an extension type blocked by eScan.

Quarantine email if attachments are not scanned

Select this checkbox to quarantine an entire email if it contains an attachment not scanned by Mail Anti-Virus.

Quarantine Attachments if they are scanned

Select this checkbox if you want eScan to quarantine attachments that are scanned by Mail Anti-Virus.

Exclude Attachments (White List)

This list is empty by default. You can add file names and file extensions that should not be blocked by eScan. You can also configure eScan to allow specific files even though if the file type is blocked. For example, if you have listed *.PIF in the list of blocked attachments and you need to allow an attachment with the name ABC, you can add abcd.pif to the Exclude Attachments list. Add *.PIF files in this section will allow all *.PIF to be delivered. MicroWorld recommends you to add the entire file name like ABCD.PIF.





Anti-Spam

Anti-Spam module filters junk and spam emails and sends content warnings to specified recipients. Here you can configure the following settings.

Start (2 Stop	
dvanced		
🗹 Send Ori	ginal Mail to User	
🗌 Do not c	heck content of Replied or Forwarded Mails	
Check C	ontent of Outgoing mails	Phrases
	Spam Filter Configuration	
🗹 Check fo	r Mail Phishing	
🗹 Treat Ma	ils with Chinese/Korean character set as SPAM	
🗹 Treat Su	bject with more than 5 whitespaces as SPAM	
🗹 Check co	ontent of HTML mails	
🗹 Quaranti	ne Advertisement mails	Advanced
	Mail Tagging Options	
O Do not o	hange email at all.	
 Both sub 	oject and body is changed. [Spam] tag is added in Subject. Actual spam conten	it is embedded in Body.
🔿 "X-MailS	can-Spam: 1" header line is added. Actual spam content is embedded in Body.	
🔘 Only [Sp	am] tag is added in Subject. Body is left unchanged.	
🔿 "X-MailS	can-Spam: 1" header line is added. Body and subject both remain unchanged.	

Advanced

This section provides you with options for configuring the general email options, spam filter configuration, and tagging emails in Anti-Spam.

Send Original Mail to User [Default]

eScan delivers spam mail to your inbox with a spam tag. When an email is tagged as SPAM, it is moved to this folder. Select this checkbox, if you want to send original email tagged as spam to the recipient as well.

Do not check content of Replied or Forwarded Mails

Select this checkbox, if you want to ensure that eScan does not check the contents of emails that you have either replied or forwarded to other recipients.

Check Content of Outgoing mails

Select this checkbox, if you want Anti-Spam to check outgoing emails for restricted content.

Phrases

Click **Phrases** to open the Phrases dialog box. This dialog box lets you configure additional email related options. In addition, it lets you specify a list of words that the user can either allow or block.





rases to Check	
	User specified whitelist of words/phrases
	User specified List of Blocked words/phrases User specified words/phrases disabled
Action List -	
Sr. No. Phrase	Quarantine Delete
1 0mp	x
Ok Cancel	
Cancer	

User specified whitelist of words/phrases (Color Code: GREEN)

This option indicates the list of words or phrases that are present in the whitelist. A phrase added to the whitelist cannot be edited, enabled, or disabled.

User specified List of Blocked words/phrases: (Color Code: RED)

This option indicates the list of words or phrases that are defined in block list.

User specified words/phrases disabled: (Color Code: GRAY)

This option indicates the list of words or phrases that are defined to be excluded during scans. The options in the Phrases to Check dialog box are disabled by default.

Action List

- Add Phrase: Option to add phrase to quarantine or delete the mail.
- Edit Phrase: To modify existing phrase added in list.
- **Enable Phrase:** By default, it is enabled. After being disabled, you can use this option to enable it.
- Disable Phrase: Disable existing phrase added in list.
- Whitelist: This will allow email to deliver to inbox when phrase is found in the email.
- Block list: This will delete email when it contains the phrase.
- **Delete:** Delete the phrase added in list.

Spam Filter Configuration

This section provides you with options for configuring the spam filter.

Check for Mail Phishing [Default]

Select this option if you want Anti-Spam to check for fraudulent emails and quarantine them.

Treat Mails with Chinese/Korean character set as SPAM [Default]

When this option is selected, emails are scanned for Chinese or Korean characters. This check is based on the research data conducted by MicroWorld's various spam email samples collected from around the globe. From these samples, it was observed that spammers often use Chinese or Korean characters in their emails.





Treat Subject with more than 5 whitespaces as SPAM [Default]

In its research, MicroWorld found that spam emails usually contain more than five consecutive white spaces. When this option is selected, Anti-Spam checks the spacing between characters or words in the subject line of emails and treats emails with more than five whitespaces in their subject lines as spam emails.

Check content of HTML mails [Default]

Select this option if you want Anti-Spam to scan emails in HTML format along with text content.

Quarantine Advertisement mails [Default]

Select this option if you want Anti-Spam to check for advertisement types of emails and quarantine them.

Advanced

Clicking **Advanced** displays Advanced Spam Filtering Options dialog box. This dialog box lets you configure the following advanced options for controlling spam.

	ive Learning Pattern (NIL	P) check	
🗹 Enable eMail Head	ler check		
🗹 Enable X-Spam Ri	ules check		
Enable Sender Pol	licy Framework (SPF) chee	ck.	
C Enable Spam URI	Realtime Blacklist (SURBI	L) check	
Enable Real-time	Blackhole List (RBL) check	k	
BL Servers		Auto-Spam Whitelist —	
	Add		Add
bl.spamcop.net	Delete	*@analytics.bounces.g	
bl.spamcop.net b.barracudacentral.or zen.spamhaus.org	Delete	*@analytics.bounces.g *@irctc.co.in *@sourcenext.co.jp *@sourcenext.com	

Enable Non- Intrusive Learning Pattern (NILP) check [Default]

Non-Learning Intrusive Pattern (NILP) is MicroWorld's revolutionary technology that uses Bayesian Filtering and works on the principles of Artificial Intelligence (AI) to analyze each email and prevents spam and phishing emails from reaching your inbox. It has self-learning capabilities and it updates itself by using regular research feeds from MicroWorld servers. It uses an adaptive mechanism to analyze each email and categorize it as spam or ham based on the behavioral pattern of the user.

Enable email Header check [Default]

Select this option if you want to check the validity of certain generic fields likes From, To, and CC in an email and marks it as spam if any of the headers are invalid.

Enable X Spam Rules check [Default]

X Spam Rules are rules that describe certain characteristics of an email. It checks whether the words in the content of emails are present in eScan's database. This database contains a list of words and





phrases, each of which is assigned a score or threshold. The Spam Rules Check technology matches X Spam Rules with the mail header, body, and attachments of each email to generate a score. If the score crosses a threshold value, the mail is considered as spam. Anti-Spam refers to this database to identify emails and takes action on them.

Enable Sender Policy Framework (SPF) check

SPF is a world standard framework adopted by eScan to prevent hackers from forging sender addresses. It acts as a powerful mechanism for controlling phishing mails. Select this checkbox if you want Anti-Spam to check the SPF record of the sender's domain. However, your computer should be connected to the Internet for this option to work.

Enable Spam URI Real-time Blacklist (SURBL) check

Select this option if you want Anti-Spam to check the URLs in the message body of an email. If the URL is listed in the SURBL site, the email will be blocked from being downloaded. However, your computer should be connected to the Internet for this option to work.

Enable Real-time Blackhole List (RBL) check

Select this option if you want Anti-Spam to check the sender's IP address in the RBL sites. If the sender IP address is blacklisted in the RBL site, the email will be blocked from being downloaded. However, your computer should be connected to the Internet for this option to work.

RBL Servers

RBL is a DNS server that lists IP addresses of known spam senders. If the IP of the sender is found in any of the blacklisted categories, the connection is terminated. The RBL Servers list contains addresses of servers and sites that maintain information regarding spammers. You can add or delete address in the list as per your requirement.

Auto Spam Whitelist

Unlike normal RBLs, SURBL scans emails for names or URLs of spam websites in the message body. It terminates the connection if the IP of the sender is found in any of the blacklisted categories. This contains a list of valid email addresses that can bypass the above Spam filtering options. It thus allows emails from the whitelist to be downloaded to the recipient's inbox. You can add or delete address in the list as per your requirement.

Mail Tagging Options

Anti-Spam also includes some mail tagging options, which are described as follows:

Do not change email at all

Select this option if you want to prevent Anti-Spam from adding the [Spam] tag to emails that have been identified as spam.

Both subject and body are changed: [Spam] tag is added in Subject: Actual spam content is embedded in Body

This option lets you identify spam emails. When you select this option, Anti-Spam adds a [Spam] tag in the subject line and the body of the email that has been identified as spam.

"X MailScan Spam: 1" header line is added: Actual spam content is embedded in Body

This option lets you add a [Spam] tag in the body of the email that has been identified as spam. In addition, it adds a line in the header line of the email.





Only [Spam] tag is added in Subject: Body is left unchanged [Default]

This option lets you add the [Spam] tag only in the subject of the email, which has been identified as spam.

"X MailScan Spam: 1" header line is added: Body and subject both remain unchanged

This option lets you add a header line to the email. However, it does not add any tag to the subject line or body of the email.

Click **Default** to apply default settings done during eScan installation. It loads and resets **NOTE** the values to the default settings.





Web Protection

Web Protection module scans the website content for specific words or phrases. It lets you block websites containing pornographic or offensive content. Administrators can use this feature to prevent employees from accessing non-work related websites during preferred duration.

Active				O Block Web Access	
Filter Categories	Allow	Block		Site Names	
Category Name	Туре	<u>Status</u>			
Pornography	Block 🗸	Customize			
Gambling	Block 🗸	Customize			
Alcohol	Block 🗸	Customize			
Violence	Block 🗸	Customize			
Drugs	Block 💙	Customize			
Retires black estates	Disale he	Customies	-		
Add Delete				Add Delete Save	
iltering Options				Add Delete Save	

Filtering Options

This tab has predefined categories that help you control access to the Internet.

Status

This section lets you allow or block access to specific websites based on Filter Categories. You can set the status as **Active** or **Block web access**. Select the **Block Web Access** option if you want to block all the websites except the ones that have been listed in the **Filter Categories**. When you select this option, only **Filtering Options** and **Pop-up Filter** tabs are available.

Filter Categories

This section uses the following color codes for allowed and blocked websites.

Green [Allow]

It represents an allowed websites category.

Red [Block]

It represents a blocked websites category.

The filter categories used in this section include categories like Pornography, Gambling, Chat, Alcohol, Violence, Drugs, Ratings_block_category, Websites Allowed, etc. You can also add or delete filter categories depending on your requirement.





Category Name

This section shows the **Words/Phrases** list. It lists the words or phrases present in the selected category. In addition, the section displays the **Site Names** list, which lists the websites belonging to the selected category. You can also add or delete filter categories depending on your requirement.

Filtering Options

This section includes the **Add sites rejected by the filter to Block category** checkbox. Select this option if you want eScan to add websites that are denied access to the Block category database automatically.

Scanning Options

This tab lets you enable log violations and shutdown program if it violates policies. It also lets you specify ports that need monitoring.

Start Stop	🗌 Start Phishing Filter 🗌 Start Malware UR
Filtering Options Scanning Options Define Time-Restriction	
Actions Use Violations Shutdown Program in 30 Secs.	Port Setting Internet Access (HTTP Port) 80,8080,3128,6588,4480,88
Default Advanced Setting OK Cancel	

Actions

This section lets you select the actions that eScan should perform when it detects a security violation.

Log Violations [Default]

This checkbox is selected by default. Select this option if you want Web Protection to log all security violations for your future reference.

Shutdown Program in 30 Secs

Select this option if you want Web Protection to shut down the browser automatically in 30 seconds when any of the defined rules or policies is violated.

Port Setting

This section lets you specify the port numbers that eScan should monitor for suspicious traffic.

Internet Access (HTTP Port)

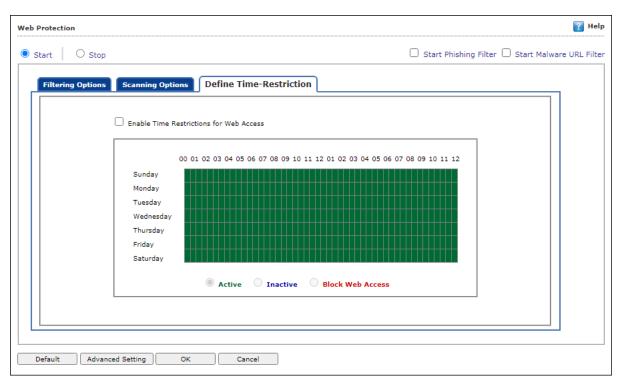
Web browsers commonly use the port numbers 80, 8080, 3128, 6588, 4480, and 88 for accessing the Internet. You can add port numbers to the **Internet Access (HTTP Port)** box to monitor the traffic on those ports.





Define Time Restriction

This section lets you define policies to restrict access to the Internet.



Enable Time Restrictions for Web Access

Select this option if you want to set restrictions on when a user can access the Internet. By default, all the fields appear dimmed. The fields are available only when you select this option.

The time restriction feature is a grid-based module. The grid is divided into columns based on the days of the week vertically and the time interval horizontally.

Active

Click **Active** and select the appropriate grid if you want to keep web access active on certain days for a specific interval.

Inactive

Select this option if you want to keep web access inactive on certain days for a specific interval.

Block Web Access

Select this option if you want to block web access on certain days for a specific interval.

Phishing and Malware URL Filter

Under Web Protection eScan also provides options to enable Phishing and Malware filters which will detect and prevent any phishing attempts on the system and block all malware attacks. To enable the filters, select **Start** and then select the respective checkboxes.

Web Protection	👔 Help
Start Stop	Start Phishing Filter Start Malware URL Filter





Advanced Settings

Clicking Advanced displays Advanced Settings.

Name	<u>Value</u>
Ignore IP address from Web-scanning	
Enable Unknown Browsers detection	1 🗸
Enable allowing of WhiteListed Site during BlockTime	1 ¥
Enable Online Web-Scanning Module	2 💙
Disable Web Warning Page	0 🗸
Enable HTTPS Popup	1 🗸
Show External Page for Web blocking (Page to be define under External Page)	0 🗸
External Page Link for Web blocking (Depends on Show External Page)	
Force inclusion of Application into Layer scanning (MW Layer)	
Enable HTTP Popup	0 🗸
Ignore Reference of sub-link	0 🗸
Allow access to SubDomain for Whitelisted sites(Only HTTP Sites)	1 🗸

Ignore IP address from Web-scanning

This option excludes entered IP address from web-scanning list and when you exclude IP Address, any file that the user downloads from any location within that domain is always allowed.

Enable Unknown Browser detection

Select this option to enable/disable unknown browser detection.

Enable allowing of WhiteListed Site during BlockTime

Select this option to enable/disable white listed site during block time.

Enable Online Web-Scanning Module

Select this option to enable/disable online web-scanning module.

Disable Web Warning Page

Select this option to enable/disable web warning page.

Enable HTTPS Popup

Select this option to enable/disable HTTPS Popup.

Show External Page for Web blocking (Page to be define under External Page)

Select this option to enable/disable external page for web blocking.





External Page Link for Web blocking (Depends on Show External Page) Select this option to enter external page link for web blocking.

Force inclusion of Application into Layer scanning (MW Layer) Select this option to enter Force inclusion of Application into Layer scanning.

Enable HTTP Popup (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to enable/disable HTTP pop-ups.

Ignore Reference of sub-link Select this option to enable/disable Ignore Reference of sub-link.

Allow access to SubDomain for Whitelisted sites (Only HTTP Sites) Select this option to enable/disable access to SubDomain for Whitelisted sites.

Allow access to SubDomain for Whitelisted sites (Only HTTPS Sites) Select this option to enable/disable access to SubDomain for Whitelisted sites.

Enable logging of visited websites Select this option to enable/disable logging of visited websites.

Block EXE download from HTTP Sites (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to enable/disable block download of .exe files from HTTP websites.

Block HTTP Traffic only on Web Browser Select this option to enable/disable blocks HTTP Traffic on Web Browser.

Allow website list (Depends on 'Block HTTP Traffic only on Web Browser'') Select this option to enter the website name need to be allowed.

Block Microsoft EDGE Browser (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to enable/disable blocking Microsoft Edge browser.

Enable Web Protection using Filter driver (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to enable/disable web protection using filter driver.

Force Disable Web Protection using Filter driver (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to force enable/disable web protection using filter driver.

WFP Exclude IP List (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Select this option to enable/disable excluding IP list from Web Filter Protection.





Firewall

Firewall module is designed to monitor all incoming and outgoing network traffic and protect your computer from all types of network based attacks. eScan includes a set of predefined access control rules that you can remove or customize as per your requirements. These rules enforce a boundary between your computer and the network. Therefore, the Firewall feature first checks the rules, analyzes network packets, and filters them on the basis of the specified rules. When you connect to the Internet, you expose your computer to various security threats.

FireWall			🔋 Help
Allow All O Limited Filter O Interactive Filter			
Zone Rule Expert Rule Trusted MAC Address	ocal IP List Application Rule		
Name	IP Address/Host Name	Туре	Zone
Allow Local Network 192.168.*.* 192.168.0.1-192.168.254.254 IP Range Trusted		Trusted	
Add Host Name Add IP Add IP Range	Modify Remove		
Default Rules Advanced Setting OK Cancel			

The Firewall feature of eScan protects your data when you:

- Connect to Internet Relay Chat (IRC) servers and join other people on the numerous channels on the IRC network.
- Use Telnet to connect to a server on the Internet and then execute the commands on the server.
- Use FTP to transfer files from a remote server to your computer.
- Use Network Basic Input Output System (NetBIOS) to communicate with other users on the LAN connected to the Internet.
- Use a computer that is a part of a Virtual Private Network (VPN).
- Use a computer to browse the Internet.
- Use a computer to send or receive email.

By default, the firewall operates in the Allow All mode. However, you can customize the firewall by using options like Limited Filter for filtering only incoming traffic and Interactive Filter to monitor incoming and outgoing traffic. The eScan Firewall also lets you specify different set of rules for allowing or blocking incoming or outgoing traffic. These rules include Zone Rules, Expert Rules, Trusted Media Access Control (MAC) Address, and Local IP list. This page provides you with options for configuring the module. You can configure the following settings to be deployed to the eScan client systems.

Allow All – Clicking **Allow All** disables the eScan Firewall i.e. all the incoming and outgoing network traffic will not be monitored/filtered.





Limited Filter – Clicking **Limited Filter** enables eScan Firewall in limited mode which will monitor all incoming traffic only and will be allowed or blocked as per the conditions or rules defined in the Firewall.

Interactive Filter – Clicking **Interactive** enables eScan Firewall to monitor all the incoming and outgoing network traffic and will be allowed or blocked as per the conditions or rules defined in the Firewall.

Following tabs are available: Zone Rule Expert Rule Trusted MAC Address Local IP List Application Rule

Zone Rule

This is a set of network access rules to make the decision of allowing/blocking of the access to the system. This will contain the source IP address or source Host name or IP range either to be allowed or blocked.

Add Host Name – This option lets you add a "host" in the zone rule. After clicking Add Host Name, enter the HOST name of the system, select the zone (Trusted/Blocked) and enter a name for the zone rule. Click OK to create the zone rule.

Add IP – This option lets you add an IP address of a system to be added in the zone rule. After clicking Add IP, enter the IP address of the system, select the zone (Trusted/Blocked) and enter a name for the zone rule. Click OK to create the Zone Rule.

Add IP Range – This option lets you add an IP range to be added in the zone rule. After clicking Add IP Range, add the IP Range (i.e. a range of IP that the zone rules should be applied), select the zone (Trusted/Blocked) and enter a name for the zone rule. Click **OK** to create the zone rule.

Modify – To modify/change any listed zone rule (s), select the zone rule to be modified and then click **Modify**.

Remove – To remove any listed zone rule (s), select the zone rule and then click **Remove**.





Expert Rule

This tab lets you specify advanced rules and settings for the eScan firewall. You can configure expert rules on the basis of the various rules, protocols, source IP address and port, destination IP address and port, and ICMP types. You can create new expert rules.

FireWal	Allow All 🔋 🔍 Limited Filter 🔋 🔿 Interactive Filter				
Zo	ne Rule Expert Rule Trusted MAC Address Local IP List Application	Rule			
	Firewall Rule	Rule Action Summary			
	UDP Rule	Permits UDP packets on Any Interface between "My Netw			
	ODD Rule Permits ODP packets on Any Interface between "My Netw ARP packet exchange - For mapping IP address to a hardware (MAC) address Permits ARP packets on Any Interface NetBios (LAN File Sharing) - Access files and folders on other computers, from your computer Permits TCP and UDP packets on Any Interface between "A NetBios (LAN File Sharing) - Access files and folders on my computer, from other computers Blocks TCP and UDP packets on Any Interface between "A				
	NetBios (LAN File Sharing) - Access files and folders on other computers, from your compute	Sted MAC Address Local IP List Application Rule Rule Action Summary Permits UDP packets on Any Interface between "My Networks" g IP address to a hardware (MAC) address Permits UDP packets on Any Interface files and folders on other computers, from your computer Permits TCP and UDP packets on Any Interface between "A files and folders on my computer, from other computers Blocks TCP and UDP packets on Any Interface between "A Permits ICMP packets on Any Interface between "My Networks" Permits ICMPV6 packets on Any Interface between "My Networks" Permits UDP packets on Any Interface between "My Networks" Permits UDP packets on Any Interface between "My Networks" uploading files Permits TCP packets on Any Interface between "My Networks"			
	NetBios (LAN File Sharing) - Access files and folders on my computer, from other computers				
	ICMP messages	Permits ICMP packets on Any Interface between "My Netv			
	ICMPV6 messages	Permits ICMPV6 packets on Any Interface between "My N			
	DHCP/BOOTP packet exchange	Permits UDP packets on Any Interface between "Any Add			
	FTP Control - For downloading and uploading files	Permits TCP packets on Any Interface between "My Netwo			
	- -	- F			
	Add Modify Remove Shift up Disable	Shift down Enable			
🗹 Sho	w Application Alert				
Default	Rules Advanced Setting OK Cancel				

However, configure these rules only if you are familiar with firewalls and networking protocols.

- Source IP Address/Host Name
- Source Port Number
- Destination IP Address/Host Name
- Destination Port Number





Add – Click Add to create a new Expert Rule. In the Add Firewall Rule Window:

General Source	Destination	Advanced	
Rule Name			
Rule Action			
Permit Packet		O Deny Packet	
TCP and UDP			~
Apply Rule on Interfac	e		
Any Interface			~

General tab

In this section, specify the Rule settings:

- **Rule Name** Provide a name to the Rule.
- Rule Action Action to be taken, whether to Permit Packet or Deny Packet.
- **Protocol** Select the network protocol (e.g. TCP, UDP, ARP) on which the Rule will be applied.
- Apply rule on Interface Select the Network Interface on which the Rule will be applied.





Source tab

In this section, specify/select the location from which network traffic originates.

General Source	Destination	Advanced	
Source IP Address			
O My Computer			
O Host Name			
O Single IP Address			
O Whole IP Range			
O Any IP Address			
My Network			
Source Port			
Any			
O Single Port			
O Port Range			
O Port List			

Source IP Address -

- My Computer The rule will be applied for the traffic originating from your computer.
- **Host Name** The rule will be applied for the traffic originating from the computer as per the host name specified.
- **Single IP Address** The rule will be applied for the traffic originating from the computer as per the IP address specified.
- Whole IP Range To enable the rule on a group of computers in series, you can specify a range of IP address. The rule will be applied for the traffic from the computer(s) which is within the defined IP range.
- **Any IP Address** When this option is selected, the rule will be applied for traffic originating from ANY IP address.
- My Network The rule will be applied for the traffic originates to your network.

Source Port -

- Any When this option is selected, the rule gets applied for traffic originating from any port.
- **Single Port** When this option is selected, the rule gets applied for the traffic originating from the specified/defined port.
- **Port Range** To enable the rule on a group of ports in series, you can specify a range of ports. The rule will be applied for the traffic originating from the port which is within the defined range of ports.
- **Port List** A list of port can be specified. The rule will be applied for the traffic originating from the ports as per specified in the list.

The rule will be applied when the selected Source IP Address and Source Port matches together.





Destination tab

In this section, specify/select the location of the computer where the destination network traffic.

General Source	Destination	Advanced	
Destination IP Addre	255		
O My Computer			
O Host Name			
🔿 Single IP Addre	255		
O Whole IP Rang	e		
Any IP Address			
🖲 My Network			
Destination Port			
Any			
O Single Port			
O Port Range			
O Port List			

Destination IP Address –

- My Computer The rule will be applied for the traffic to your computer.
- **Host Name** The rule will be applied for the traffic to the computer as per the host name specified.
- **Single IP Address** The rule will be applied for the traffic to the computer as per the IP address specified.
- Whole IP Range To apply the rule on a group of computers in series, you can specify a range of IP address. The rule will be applied for the traffic to the computer(s) which is within the defined IP range.
- **Any IP Address** When this option is selected, the rule will be applied for the traffic to ANY IP Addresses.
- My Network The rule will be applied for the traffic to your network.

Destination Port –

- Any After selecting this option, the rule will be applied for the traffic to any port.
- **Single Port** After selecting this option, the rule will be applied for the traffic to the specified/defined port.
- **Port Range** To enable the rule on a group of ports in series, you can specify a range of ports. The rule will be applied for the traffic to the port which is within the defined range of ports.
- **Port List** A list of port can be specified/added. The rule will be applied for traffic to the ports as per specified in the list.

The rule will be applied when the selected Destination IP Address and Destination Port matches together.





Advanced tab

This tab contains advance setting for Expert Rule.

neral Source Destination Advance	ced	
Enable Advanced ICMP Processing		
ICMP Type	In O	Jt
Destination Unreachable]
Echo Reply (ping))
Echo Request (ping))
Information Reply)
Information Request)
Parameter Problem)
Redirect		
Source Quench		
TTL Exceeded		
The packet must be from/to a trusted MAC addr Log information when this rule applies	ress	

Enable Advanced ICMP Processing – This is activated when the ICMP protocol is selected in the General tab.

The packet must be from/to a trusted MAC address – When this option is selected, the rule will only be applied on the MAC address defined/listed in the Trusted MAC Address tab.

Log information when this rule applies – This will enable to log information of the Rule when it is implied.

Modify – Clicking Modify lets you modify any Expert Rule.

Remove – Clicking Remove lets you delete a rule from the Expert Rule.

Shift Up and Shift Down– The UP and DOWN arrow button will enable to move the rules up or down as required and will take precedence over the rule listed below it.

Enable Rule/Disable Rule – These buttons lets you enable or disable a particular selected rule from the list.

Trusted MAC Address

This section contains the information of the MAC address of the system. A MAC address is a hardware address that uniquely identifies each node of a network. The Trusted MAC address list will be checked along with the Expert Rule only when "The packet must be from/to a trusted MAC address" option is checked and the action will be as per specified in the rule. (Refer to the Advance Tab of the Expert Rule).





Add – To add a MAC address click on this button. Enter the MAC address to be added in the list for e.g. 00-13-

Edit – To modify/change the MAC Address, click Edit.

Remove – To delete the MAC Address, click Remove.

Clear All – To delete the entire listed MAC Address, click Clear All.

Local IP List

This section contains a list of Local IP addresses.

ireWall
O Allow All 🔋 🖲 Limited Filter 📔 O Interactive Filter
Zone Rule Expert Rule Trusted MAC Address LOCal IP List Application Rule
0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000
127.*.*
192.168.*.*
FE80:0000;0000;0000;0000;0000;0000
Add Remove Clear All
Show Application Alert
Default Rules Advanced Setting OK Cancel

Add – To add a local IP address, click Add.

Remove – To remove a local IP address, click Remove.

Clear All - To clear all local IP addresses, click Clear All.





Application Rule

In this section you can define the permissions for different application. The application can be set to Ask, Permit or Deny mode.

			O Interactive Filter	Limited Filter	all Ilow All 💿 Lin
	e	t Application	usted MAC Address	ert Rule Trus	one Rule Exper
Access	Path		Description		Application
			move Clear All	Remo	Add
					how Application Alert
					now Application Alerc
 			OK Cancel	ced Setting	It Rules Advanced

Defining permission for an application

To define permission for an application,

1. Click Add.

Add New Application window appears.

ation	
ne with path	
🖲 Permit	Openy
Cancel	

- 2. Enter the application name with path and select permission.
- 3. Click OK.

The permission for the application will be defined.

Removing permission of an application

Select an application and then click **Remove**. The application will no longer have the permission.

Clear All – This option will clear/delete all the information stored by the Firewall cache.

Other Options:

• Show Application Alert – Selecting this checkbox will display an eScan Firewall Alert displaying the blocking of any application as defined in the Application Rule.





- **Default Rules** This button will load/reset the rules to the Default settings present during the installation of eScan. This will remove all the settings defined by user.
- Advanced Settings: This button allows you to configure the advanced settings such as block port scan and disable Trojan rule.

	Setting	
	Name	Value
	Disable Trojan Rule	1 🗸
\Box	Block Portscan	0 🗸





Endpoint Security

Endpoint Security module protects your computer or Computers from data thefts and security threats through USB or FireWire® based portable devices. It comes with Application Control feature that lets you block unwanted applications from running on your computer. In addition, this feature provides you with a comprehensive reporting feature that lets you determine which applications and portable devices are allowed or blocked by eScan. The DLP (Attachment Control) allows to block the attachments the unauthorized user tries to send and keeps attachment flow secure.

plication Control Device Con	trol DLP (Attachment Control)	
Enable Application Control		
Block List White List Defin	ne Time-Restrictions	
iter Application to Block		
st of Blocked Applications		Block
+ Custom Group	Allow This Group	Import
+ Computer Game	Allow This Group	Delete
+ Instant Messengers	Allow This Group	
+ Music Video Players	Allow This Group	
+ P2P Applications	Allow This Group	

This page provides you with information regarding the status of the module and options for configuring it.

• **Start/Stop:** It lets you enable or disable Endpoint Security module. Click the appropriate option.

There are three tabs – Application Control, Device Control, and DLP (Attachment Control), which are as follows:





Application Control

This tab lets you control the execution of programs on the computer. All the controls on this tab are disabled by default. You can configure the following settings.

Enable Application Control

Select this option if you want to enable the Application Control feature of the Endpoint Security module.

Block List

Enter Application to Block: It indicates the name of the application you want to block from execution. Enter the full name of the application to be blocked.

List of Blocked Applications

This list contains blocked executables of applications that are predefined by MicroWorld. Each of the applications listed in the predefined categories are blocked by default. In addition, you can also add executables that you need to block only to the Custom Group category. If you want, you can unblock the predefined application by clicking the **UnBlock** link. The predefined categories include computer games, instant messengers, music & video players, and P2P applications.

ter	Applic	ation	to White List					
	1.5-1		ications					
nte		Whitel					▲ Whiteli	
	Allow	Block	Application Name	Original Name	Internal Name	Des	Delete	e
	۲	0	netsetup.exe			network setup wizar		
	۲	0	ntsd.exe			symbolic debugger f		
	۲	0	nslookup.exe	nslookup.exe.mui	nslookup.exe	nslookup		
	۲	0	narratonexe			microsoft narrator		
	۲	0	notepad.exe	notepad.exe	notepad	notepad		
	۲	0	mmc.exe	mmc.exe.mui	mmc.exe	microsoft managem		
	۲	0	mshearts.exe			hearts		
	۲	0	mstsc.exe	mstsc.exe.mui	mstsc.exe	remote desktop con		
_		0	mspaint.exe	mspaint.exe.mui	mspaint	paint	-	

White List

Enable White Listing

Select this checkbox to enable the whitelisting feature of the Endpoint Security module.

Enter Application to whitelist

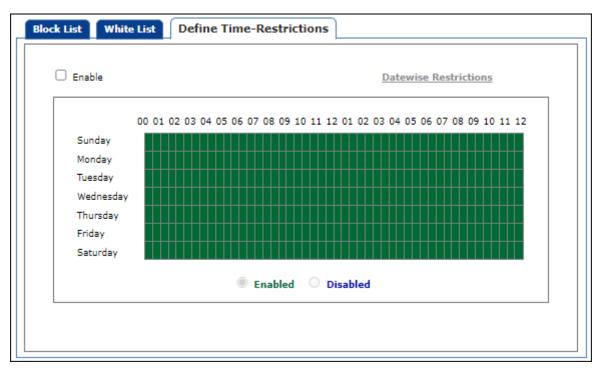
Enter the name of the application to be whitelisted.

White Listed Applications

This list contains whitelisted applications that are predefined by MicroWorld. Each of the applications listed in the predefined categories are allowed by default. If you want to block the predefined categories, select the **Block** option.







Define Time Restrictions

This feature lets you define time restriction when you want to allow or block access to the applications based on specific days and between pre-defined hours during a day.

For example, the administrator can block computer games, instant messengers, for the whole day but allow during lunch hours without violating the Application Control Policies.

Enable

This option lets you enable/disable application control feature.

Datewise Restrictions

This feature lets you define datewise restrictions when you want to allow or block access to the applications based on specific dates and between pre-defined hours during that date.





Device Control

The Endpoint Security module protects your computer from unauthorized portable storage devices prompting you for the password whenever you plug in such devices. The devices are also scanned immediately when connected to prevent any infected files running and infecting the computer.

O Stop Dication Control Device Control DLP (Attachment Control) Enable Device Control USB Settings	
Enable Device Control	
nable Device Control	
Block USB Ports Ask for Password	
Use eScan Administrator Password Use Other Password	
✓ Do Virus Scan ✓ Allow user to cancel scan	
Read Only - USB Z Disable AutoPlay	
Record Files Copied To Network Ignore System Drive Whitelist Scan Whitelisted USB Devices Remove Read Only access for Whitelisted USB Device	
Serial No. Device Name Description Add	
Edit	
Delete	
RemoveAll	
Disable Web Cam	
_	
Disable SD Cards	
Disable SD Cards D / DVD Settings Block CD / DVD Read Only - CD / DVD	

You can configure the following settings:

Enable Device Control [Default]

Select this option if you want to monitor all the USB storages devices connected to your endpoint. This will enable all the options on this tab.

USB Settings

This section lets you customize the settings for controlling access to USB storage devices.





Block USB Ports

Select this option if you want to block all the USB storage devices from sharing data with endpoints.

Ask for Password

Select this option, if you want eScan to prompt for a password whenever a USB storage device is connected to the computer. You have to enter the correct password to access USB storage device. It is recommended that you always keep this checkbox selected.

- Use eScan Administrator: This option is available only when you select the Ask for Password checkbox. Click this option if you want to assign eScan Administrator password for accessing USB storage device.
- Use Other Password: This option is available only when you select the Ask for Password checkbox. Click this option if you want assign a unique password for accessing USB storage device.

Do Virus Scan [Default]

When you select this option, the Endpoint Security module runs a virus scan if the USB storage device is connected. It is recommended that you always keep this checkbox selected.

Allow user to cancel scan [Default]

Select this option to allow the user to cancel the scanning process of the USB device.

Read Only – USB

Select this option if you want to allow access of the USB device in read-only mode.

Disable AutoPlay [Default]

When you select this option, eScan disables the automatic execution of any program stored on a USB storage device when you connect the device.

Record Files Copied To USB/CD

Select this option if you want eScan to create a record of the files copied from the system to USB drive.

Record Files Copied To Network

Select this option if you want eScan to create a record of the files copied from managed computers to the network drive connected to it.

Record Files Copied To Local

Select this option if you want eScan to create a record of the files copied from the one drive to another drive of the system. Please note that if you have selected "Ignore System Drive" along with this option no record will be captured if the files are copied from system drive (the drive in which OS is installed) to another drive.

Ignore System Drive [Default]

Select this option in case of you do not want eScan to record files that are copied from system drive of managed computers to either network drive or any local drive.

Whitelist

eScan provides a greater level of endpoint security by prompting you for a password whenever you connect a USB drive. To disable password protection for a specific device, you can add it along with its serial number to the whitelist. The next time you connect the device it will not ask for a password but will directly display the files or folders stored on the device. This section displays the serial





number and device name of each of the whitelisted devices in a list. You can add devices to this list by clicking **Add**. The Whitelist section displays the following button.

Scan Whitelisted USB Devices

By default, eScan does not scan whitelisted USB devices. Select this option, if you want eScan to scan USB devices that have been added to the whitelist.

Remove Read Only access for Whitelisted USB Device

Select this option to remove the read-only access for the whitelisted USB Device.

Add

Click **Add** to whitelist USB devices.

USB Whitelist window appears.

USB Whitelist				
Serial No.	Device Name	<u>Host Name</u>	<u>Client Date and</u> <u>Time</u>	<u>Description</u>
3+,1,+11+8	Generic Tech Chell USB Device	With call 7	25/06/21 4:40:09 PM	
	OK Cancel Custom	n Edit		

To whitelist a USB device, its details are required. If a USB device is connected to any eScan installed endpoint, the USB details are sent to the server. The administrator will have to manually whitelist the USB device.

To manually add a USB device in USB Whitelist without connecting to an endpoint, click Custom.

USB Whitelist	
Serial No.	
Device Name	
·	
Description	
Description	

Enter the USB details and then click **OK**. The USB device will be added and whitelisted.





Import

To whitelist USB devices from a CSV file, click **Import**. Click **Choose File** to import the file with the list. The list should be in following format: Serial No 1, Device Name 1, Device Description 1(Optional) Serial No 2, Device Name 2 **Eg:** SDFSD677GFQW8N6CN8CBN7CXVB, USB Drive 2.5, Whitelist by xyzDFRGHHRS54456HGDF347OMCNAK, Flash Drive 2.2

Disable Web Cam: Select this option to disable Webcams.

Disable SD Cards: Select this option to disable SD cards.

Disable Bluetooth: Select this option to disable Bluetooth.

CD/DVD Settings

Block CD / DVD: Select this option to block all CD/DVD access.

Read Only - CD / DVD: Select this option to allow read-only access for CD/DVD.





DLP (Attachment Control)

The DLP (Attachment Control) tab lets you control attachment flow within your organization. You can block/allow all attachments the user tries to send through specific processes that can be defined. You can exclude specific domains/subdomains that you trust, from being blocked even if they are sent though the blocked processes mentioned before.

int Security	<table-cell></table-cell>
art O Stop	
Application Control Device Control DLP (Attachment Control)	
Attachment Allowed	
Attachment Blocked	
Enter Process Name : Eg. Thunderbird.exe	
Add Delete	
Blacklisted Process	
	-
Attachments will be allowed from below sites irrespective of the above settings	
Attachments will be allowed from below sites irrespective of the above settings Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo	
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo	·
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo Add Delete	×
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo Add Delete	*
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo Add Delete	*
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo Add Delete	×
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo Add Delete	*
Enter Site Name : Eg. Gmail.com,Yahoo Add Delete	*

Attachment Allowed [Default]

Select this option if you want attachments to be allowed through all processes except a specific set of processes mentioned below.

Attachment Blocked

Select this option if you want attachments to be blocked through all processes except a specific set of processes mentioned below.

Configure Extension/Group based Whitelisting

This option allows you to select/add groupwise file extensions in the whitelist in order to allow the attachments of those formats via mails and other processes. Apart from default extension groups, you can add new group of extensions using the **CUSTOM** group.

Enter Process Name

Enter the name of the processes that should be excluded from the above selection.





Blacklisted Process

This will display a list of process you excluded when you selected the **Attachment Allowed** option. eScan will block all attachments through this process.

Enter Site Name

Enter the name of the websites through which attachments should be allowed irrespective of the above settings.

Whitelisted Sites

The websites added above to be whit listed are displayed in this list.

Attachment / Email report

Report for Attachment Allowed [Default]

This will list all the attachment allowed along with Application used to send attachment. E.g. Google chrome, Firefox, Outlook, Skype, Yahoo messenger, etc.

Report for all email (Including Attachment)

This will list all the email attachment uploaded along with Application used and subject of the email.

Advanced Settings

	Name	Value	
	Allow Composite USB Device	1 ¥	
	Allow USB Modem	1 🗸	
	Enable Predefined USB Exclusion for Data Outflow	1 🗸	
	Enable CD/DVD Scanning	1 ¥	
0	Enable USB Whitelisting option on prompt for eScan clients	0 🗸	
	Enable USB on Terminal Client	1 🗸	
	Enable Domain Password for USB	0 🗸	
	Show System Files Execution Events	0 🗸	
	Allow mounting of Imaging device	1 🗸	
	Block File Transfer from IM	1 ¥	
	Allow WIFI Network	1 🗸	
	Whitelisted WIFI SSID (Comma Separated)		
	Allow Network Printer	1 🗸	
	Whitelisted Network Printer list(Comma Separated)		
	Disable Print Screen	0 🗸	
	Allow eToken Devices	1 🗸	

Allow Composite USB Device (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Select this option to allow/block use of composite USB devices.

Allow USB Modem (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Select this option to allow/block use of USB modem.





Enable Predefined USB Exclusion for Data Outflow Select this option to enable/disable use of predefined USB.

Enable CD/DVD Scanning

Select this option enable/disable scanning of CD/DVD.

Enable USB Whitelisting option on prompt for eScan clients Select this option to enable/disable USB Whitelisting option on prompt for eScan clients.

Enable USB on Terminal Client (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Select this option to enable/disable USB on terminal client.

Enable Domain Password for USB

Select this option to enable/disable domain password for USB.

Show System Files Execution Events Select this option allow/block system files execution events.

Allow mounting of Imaging device (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to allow/block mounting of imaging devices.

Block File Transfer from IM (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to allow/block file transfer from Instant Messengers.

Allow Wi-Fi Network (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to allow/block use of Wi-Fi networks.

Whitelisted WIFI SSID (Comma Separated)

Select this option to whitelist WIFI SSID.

Allow Network Printer (1 = Enable/0 = Disable) Select this option to allow/block use of network printers.

Whitelisted Network Printer list (Comma Separated)

Select this option to whitelist network printer list.

Disable Print Screen

Select this option to enable/disable use of printer screen.

Allow eToken Devices (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Select this option to allow/block use of eToken devices.

Include File Extension for File Activity Monitoring (e.g EXE) Select this option to include File Extension for File Activity Monitoring.

Exclude File Extension for File Activity Monitoring (e.g EXE) Select this option to exclude File Extension for File Activity Monitoring (e.g EXE).

Auto Whitelist BitLocker encrypted USB Devices

Select this option to allow/block auto whitelist BitLocker encrypted USB devices.

Ask Password for whitelisted Devices only

Select this option to allow/block ask password for whitelisted devices.





Click Default to apply default settings done during eScan installation. It loads and resets the values to the default settings.

Privacy Control

Privacy Control module protects your confidential information from theft by deleting all the temporary information stored on your computer. This module lets you use the Internet without leaving any history or residual data on your hard drive. It erases details of sites and web pages you have accessed while browsing. This page provides you with options for configuring the module.

Scheduler Options You can set to run this Tool Automatically Options Below.	at Various times, Select the times you woul	d like Auto Erase to run from the
Run at System Startup	Run Everyday at 0:00 am] ⊕ ▼
Clear Auto-Complete Memory Clear Last Run Menu Clear Temporary Folders Clear Temporary Folders Clear Browser Address Bar History	Clear Last Search Menu Clear Recent Documents Clear Favorites Clear Guen/Save Dialog Box History Empty Recycle Bin	Clear Cache Clear Cookies Clear Plugins Clear ActiveX Clear History Select All

It consists following tabs:

- General
- Advanced

General tab

This tab lets you specify the unwanted files created by web browsers or other installed software that should be deleted. You can configure the following settings:

Scheduler Options

You can set the scheduler to run at specific times and erase private information, such as your browsing history from your computer. The following settings are available in the **Scheduler Options** section.

Run at System Startup

It auto executes the Privacy Control module and performs the desired auto-erase functions when the computer starts up.

Run Every day at

It auto-executes the Privacy Control module at specified times and performs the desired auto erase functions. You can specify the time within the hours and minutes boxes.





Auto Erase Options

The browser stores traceable information of the websites that you have visited in certain folders. This information can be viewed by others. eScan lets you remove all traces of websites that you have visited. To do this, it auto detects the browsers that are installed on your computer. It then displays the traceable component and default path where the temporary data is stored on your computer. You can select the following options based on your requirements.

Clear Auto Complete Memory

Auto Complete Memory refers to the suggested matches that appear when you enter text in the Address bar, the Run dialog box, or forms in web pages. Hackers can use this information to monitor your surfing habits. When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears all this information from the computer.

Clear Last Run Menu

When you select this option, Privacy Control clears this information in the Run dialog box.

Clear Temporary Folders

When you select this option, Privacy Control clears files in the Temporary folder. This folder contains temporary files installed or saved by software. Clearing this folder creates space on the hard drive of the computer and boosts the performance of the computer.

Clear Last Find Computer

When you select this option, Privacy Control clears the name of the computer for which you searched last.

Clear Browser Address Bar History

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the websites from the browser's address bar history.

Clear Last Search Menu

When you select this option, Privacy Control clears the name of the objects that you last searched for by using the Search Menu.

Clear Recent Documents

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the names of the objects found in Recent Documents.

Clear Favorites

This checkbox clears Favorites added by the user in the computer.

Clear Open/Save Dialog box History

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the links of all the opened and saved files.

Empty Recycle Bin

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the Recycle Bin. Use this option with caution as it permanently clears the recycle bin.

Clear Cache

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the Temporary Internet Files.





Clear Cookies

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the Cookies stored by websites in the browser's cache.

Clear Plugins

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control removes the browser plug-in.

Clear ActiveX

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the ActiveX controls.

Clear History

When you select this checkbox, Privacy Control clears the history of all the websites that you have visited.

In addition to these options, the Auto Erase Options section has below option as well.

Select All/ Unselect All

Click this button to select/unselect all the auto erase options.

Advanced tab

This tab lets you select unwanted or sensitive information stored in MS Office, other Windows files and other locations that you need to clear.

General Advance	ed Windows Temp files of Scan Disk Temp Files Clipboard Data Start Menu Order History Registry Streams MRU (Most recently used) Application Log	Others Windows Media Player Play List Windows Media Player History
		Select All

MS Office

The most recently opened MS office files will be cleared if these options are selected.

Windows

The respective unwanted files like temp files will be cleared.

Others

The recent Windows media player playlist and its history will be cleared.

Select All/ Unselect All

Click this button to select/unselect all the options in Advanced tab.

Click **Default** to apply default settings, which are done during installation of eScan. It loads and resets the values to the default settings.





Administrator Password

Administrator Password lets you create and change password for administrative login of eScan protection center and Two-Factor Authentication.

eScan Password

It also lets you keep the password as blank, wherein you can login to eScan protection center without entering any password for read-only access.

Change Password	?
eScan Password Two-Factor Authentication	
O Set Password	Blank Password
Enter new Password	
Confirm new Password	
Password is case-sensitive	
Use separate uninstall password Enter uninstall password Confirm uninstall password	
Default Advanced Setting OK Cancel	

There is also an option to set a uninstall password. An uninstallation password prevents personnel from uninstalling eScan client from their endpoint. Upon selecting **Uninstall** option, eScan asks them for uninstall password. To set an uninstall password, select checkbox **Use separate uninstall password**.

Two-Factor Authentication

Your default system authentication (login/password) is Single-Factor Authentication which is considered insecure as it may put your organization's data at high risk of compromise. The Two-Factor Authentication, also more commonly known as 2FA, adds an extra layer of protection to your basic system logon. The 2FA feature requires personnel to enter an additional passcode after entering the system login password. So, even if an unauthorized person knows your system credentials, the 2FA feature secures a system against unauthorized logons.





eScan Password	Two-Factor Authentication	n		
Enable Two-Factor	Authentication			
RDP	SafeMode	User Logon	Unlock	
Use eScan Admi	inistrator Password			
Use Other Passv				
Use Online Two-	Factor Authentication			
All Users	O Particular Users			
Note : Users can	be added via Settings > Two-Facto	or Authentication > Users for 2FA o	ption	

With the 2FA feature enabled, the system will be protected with basic system login and eScan 2FA. After entering the system credentials, eScan Authentication screen (as shown below) will appear. The personnel will have to enter the 2FA passcode to access the system. A maximum of three attempts are allowed to enter the correct passcode. If the 2FA login fails, the personnel will have to wait for 30 seconds to log in again. Read about managing 2FA license.

eScan Auther	ntication
WORLD	Two-Factor Authentication
	Enter your passcode:
eSoan www.escanav.com Copyright MicroWorld	Verify
	Wed, 04 Aug 2021 01:17:00 PM UTC

To enable the Two-Factor Authentication feature, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the eScan web console, go to Managed Computers.
- 2. Click **Policy Templates** > **New Template.**

0	You can enable the 2FA feature for existing Policy Templates by selecting a Policy
NOTE	Template and clicking Properties . Then, follow the steps given below.

- 3. Select Administrator Password checkbox and then click Edit.
- 4. Click **Two-Factor Authentication** tab. Following window appears.





eScan Password	Two-Factor Authentication	ı]	
Enable Two-Facto	or Authentication		
RDP	SafeMode	User Logon	Unlock
Use eScan Adr	ninistrator Password sword		
All Users	 Factor Authentication Particular Users n be added via Settings > Two-Facto 	r Authentication > Users for 2FA op	otion

5. Select the checkbox **Enable Two-Factor Authentication**. The Two-Factor Authentication feature gets enabled.

Login Scenarios

The 2FA feature can be used for following all login scenarios:

RDP

RDP stands for Remote Desktop Protocol. Whenever someone takes remote connection of a client's system, the personnel will have to enter system login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

Safe Mode

After a system is booted in Safe Mode, the personnel will have to enter system login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

User Logon

Whenever a system is powered on or restarted, the personnel will have to enter system login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

Unlock

Whenever a system is locked, the personnel will have to enter login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

Password Types

If the policy is applied to a group, the 2FA passcode will be same for all group members. The 2FA passcode can also be set for specific computer(s). You can use following all password types to log in:

Use eScan Administrator Password

You can use the existing eScan Administrator password for 2FA login. This password can be set in **eScan Password** tab besides the **Two-Factor Authentication** tab.

Use Other Password

You can set a new password which can be combination of uppercase, lowercase, numbers, and special characters.

Use Online Two-Factor Authentication

This option can be enabled for all users or for particular user according to the requirement. To learn more about adding user and enabling the 2FA, <u>click here</u>.





Users can be added via Settings > Two-Factor Authentication > Users for 2FA NOTE option.

To use this feature, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Install the Authenticator app from Play Store for Android devices or App Store for iOS devices.
- 2. Open the Authenticator app and tap **Scan a barcode**.
- 3. Select the checkbox Use Online Two-Factor Authentication.
- 4. Go to **Managed Computers** and below the top right corner, click **QR code for 2FA**. A QR code appears.
- 5. Scan the onscreen QR code via the Authenticator app. A Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP) appears on smart device.
- 6. Forward this TOTP to personnel for login.

Click **Default** to apply default settings done during eScan installation. It loads and resets the values to the default settings.

Advanced Setting

Clicking Advanced Setting displays Advance setting.

	Name	<u>Value</u>
	Enable Automatic Download	1 🗸
	Enable Manual Download	1 🗸
	Enable Alternate Download	1 🗸
	Set Alternate Download Interval(In Hours)	6
	Disable download from Internet for Update Agents	0 🗸
	Stop Auto change for download from Internet for Update Agents	1 🗸
	Enable Download of AntiSpam update first on clients	1 🗸
	No password for pause protection	0 🗸
	Download Signature Updates from Internet and Policy from Primary Server	0 🗸
	Change ICON to eScan	0 🗸
	Stop Patch Notification	0 🗸
	Set IPONLY	0 🗸
\Box	Enable HTTPS Download	0 🗸

Enable Automatic Download (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable Automatic download of Antivirus signature updates.

Enable Manual Download (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable Manual download of Antivirus signature updates.

Enable Alternate Download (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable download of signatures from eScan (Internet) if eScan Server is not reachable.





Set Alternate Download Interval (In Hours)

It lets you define time interval to check for updates from eScan (Internet) and download it on managed computers.

Disable download from Internet for Update Agents (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Selecting this option lets you disable Update Agents from downloading the virus signature from internet.

Stop Auto change for download from Internet for Update Agents (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

This option is used when an Update Agent didn't find the primary server to download virus signature, then it tries to get virus signature from internet, so to stop Update Agent from downloading from internet this option is to be set to 1(one).

Enable Download of Anti-Spam update first on clients (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

Normally while updating a system for virus signatures, we first download the anti-virus signature and then anti-spam signature. This option lets you first download Anti-spam updates on clients.

No password for pause protection

Selecting this option lets you pause the eScan protection without entering password.





ODS/Schedule Scan

ODS (On Demand Scanning)/Schedule Scan provides you with various options like – checking for viruses, and making settings for creating logs and receiving alerts. You can also create task in the scheduler for automatic virus scanning.

It consists following tabs:

- Options
- Scheduler

Virus Check Alert		
In the case of an infection:	Automatic	~
Priority of scanner:	Normal (normal runtime)	~
File types:	Automatic type recognition	~
Use separate exclude list for ODS:	Add / Delete	
Limit CPU Usage	Enable for ODS only	~
CPU Percentage Value :	20 🗸	

Options

Options tab lets you make the settings for checking viruses and receiving alerts. There are two tabs – Virus Check and Alerts. You can do the following activities.

- Virus check
- Alerts

Virus Check

It lets you configure the settings for checking viruses. To set virus check,

- 1. Specify the following field details.
 - In the case of an infection: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example, Log only, Delete infected file, and [Default] Automatic.
 - **Priority of scanner**: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example,
 - \circ High (short runtime)
 - o Normal (normal runtime) [Default]
 - o Low (long runtime)
 - **File types**: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example, \[Default\] Automatic type recognition and only program files.





- Use separate exclude list for ODS: Select this option to add a list of file/folders that should be excluded from scan.
- Limit CPU Usage: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example, \[Default\] Enable for ODS only.
- **CPU Percentage Value**: select the preferred value (between 10-80) in percentage of CPU Usage.
- 2. Click Save.

Alert tab

It lets you configure the settings for virus alert. You can also create a log of the infected viruses.

Options	s Check Alert		
	rt Warn, if virus signature is more than Warn, if the last computer analysis was more than	3	days old. days ago
	Settings		
	Prepare Log Only infection to be logged Full log		

To set alerts,

- 1. Under Alert section, Select the [Default] Warn, if virus signature is more than x days old checkbox, and then enter the number of days in the provided field, if you want to receive alerts when virus signature exceeds the specified days. By default, value 3 appears in the field.
- 2. Select the **Warn, if the last computer analysis was more than** x days ago checkbox, and then enter the number of days in provided field, if you want to receive alerts when last computer analysis exceeds the specified days. By default, 3 appear in the field.
- 3. Under **Log Settings** section, select the [Default] **Prepare Log** checkbox, if you want to prepare log of the infected files, and then select an appropriate option.
- 4. Click Save.





Scheduler

Scheduler tab lets you create/delete various tasks in the scheduler for automatic virus scanning.

Name	Schedule		Next start	
Clear All	Add task	Delete task	Edit	

Clear All - This button will clear all the listed tasks.

Add Task

Job <u>Analysis</u>	extent Schedule Virus scan	
Name	Active	
Start Type		
	eground 🗹 Allow user to cancel scan	
LQuit:		
Do not quit if virus	is detected 💙	
Scan only whe	en idle 🔹 🗍 Automatically shutdown machine after scan	
Allow user to a	delete and to change properties of this job	

Automatic Virus Scan lets you do following activities:

- a) Creating job
- b) Setting analysis extent
- c) Scheduling virus execution
- d) Scheduling virus scan





a) Job

It lets you create the job details for virus scanning.

- 1. Click the **Job** tab.
- 2. Specify the following field details.
 - Name: Enter a name for the task.
 - Active [Default]: Select this checkbox, if you want to allow the client to schedule the task.
 - Start in foreground [Default]: Click this option if you want to view scanning process running in front of you.

When this option is selected, the Scan only when idle option becomes unavailable.

- **Start in background**: Click this option if you want scanning process to run in the background. By default, Do not quit if virus is detected option is selected. When you select this option, the **Quit** drop-down list becomes unavailable.
- Allow user to cancel scan [Default]: Select this option to allow the user to cancel the scanning process of the USB device.
- **Quit**: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example, \[Default\] Do not quit if virus is detected.
- Scan only when idle: Select this checkbox, if you want to scan only in idle mode.
- Automatically shutdown machine after scan: Select this checkbox, if you want to shutdown the system automatically after scan completed.
- Allow user to delete and to change properties of this job: Select this checkbox, to allow user to configure the properties of Job.
- 3. Click Save.

b) Analysis Extent

It lets you configure analysis extent settings for virus scanning.

Job Analysis extent Schedule Virus scan	
 Scan Startup Scan memory, registry and services Scan local hard drives Scan System Drive Scan Data Drives Scan network drives 	
Gave	

- 1. Click the **Analysis Extent** tab.
- 2. Select the Scan Startup option, if you want to scan all startup entries.
- 3. Select the **Scan memory, registry** and **services** option, if you want to scan memory, registry and services.
- 4. Select the Scan local hard drives [Default] option, if you want to scan local hard drives.





- 5. Select **Scan network drives** option, if you want to scan network drives. Users should note that scanning a network drive may affect system performance.
- 6. Click Save.

c) Schedule

It lets you schedule the date and time of execution for virus scanning.

Job Analysis extent	Schedule Virus scan	
- Execute		
Once	O Weekly	
O Hourly	O Monthly	
O Daily	O With system startup	
Date and time	12:00 pm	

- 1. Click **Schedule** tab.
- 2. Under **Execute** section, select an appropriate option. For example, [Default] once, weekly, hourly, and so on.
- 3. Under **Date and time** section, click the **Calendar** icon. The calendar appears.
- 4. Select an appropriate date from the calendar.

Click the left < and right > sign to navigate to the previous or next month and year from the calendar respectively.

- 5. Click the **Time** icon. The Timer appears.
- 6. Click the **AM** tab to view the before noon time and **PM** tab to view the afternoon time, and then select an appropriate time from the list.
- 7. Click Save.





d) Virus Scan

It lets you schedule virus scanning.

ob Analysis extent Scheduk	Virus scan	
In the case of an infection:	Automatic	~
Priority of scanner:	Normal (normal runtime)	~
File types:	Automatic type recognition	~
Log Settings		
Prepare Log		
Only infection to be logged		
O Full log		
1		

- 1. Click the Virus Scan tab.
- 2. Specify the following field details:
 - In the case of an infection: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example, Log only, Delete infected file, and [Default] Automatic.
 - **Priority of scanner**: Select an appropriate priority from the drop-down list.
 - **File types**: Select an appropriate option from the drop-down list. For example, [Default] Automatic type recognition and Only program files.
- 3. Under **Log Settings** section, select the **Prepare Log [Default]** checkbox, if you want to prepare log of the infected files, and then click an appropriate option.
- 4. Click Save.

Delete Task – Clicking Delete Task lets you delete the particular task from the list.

Edit – Clicking Edit lets you edit the properties of the particular task from the list.

Click **Default** to apply default settings, which are done during installation of eScan. It loads and resets the values to the default settings.





Advanced Settings

Name	<u>Value</u>
Autorun System Scanning if System not scanned for days defined	1
Ignore Battery status	0 🗸
Scan USB when All Drive option selected	0 🗸
RemoveLNK	0 🗸
Start Background Scan in System Mode	1 🗸
Enable Scan Caching	1 🗸
Check for Corrupted files	0 🗸
Scan in Low Priority Mode	0 🗸
Enable Unhiding of USB Files & Folder	1 🗸
Enable Missed schedule scan JOB's to run	1 ¥

Autorun System Scanning if System not scanned for days defined

This option let you define days for autorun system scanning if system is not scanned.

Ignore Battery status (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

This option scan computer, even when Laptop is on Battery Mode.

Scan USB when All Drive option selected (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

Select this option to scan USB when all drive option selected.

Remove LNK (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

This option lets you Enable/Disable Removal of LNK on real-time basis.

Start Background Scan in System Mode (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

This option starts background scans when systems switch to system mode.

Enable Scan Caching (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable automatic caching of files.

Check for Corrupted files (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable checking of corrupted files during scan.

Scan in Low Priority Mode (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable Scan in Low Priority Mode.

Enable Unhiding of USB Files & Folder (1 = Enable/0= Disable) It lets you Enable/Disable unhiding of USB files & folder.

Enable Missed schedule scan JOB's to run (1 = Enable/0= Disable) It lets you Enable/Disable missed schedule scan JOB's to run.





MWL (MicroWorld WinSock Layer)

eScan's "MicroWorld-WinSock Layer" (MWL) is a revolutionary concept in scanning Internet traffic on a real-time basis. It has changed the way the world deals with Content Security threats. Unlike the other products and technologies, MWL tackles a threat before it reaches your applications. MWL is technically placed above the WinSock layer and acts as a "Transparent Gatekeeper" on the WinSock layer of the operating system. All content passing through WinSock has to mandatorily pass through MWL, where it is checked for any security violating data. If such data occurs, it is removed and the clean data is passed on to the application.

MWL Inclusion List

Inclusion List contains the name of all executable files which will bind itself to MWTSP.DLL. All other files are excluded.

You can do the following activities.

- Adding files to Inclusion List
- Deleting files from Inclusion List
- Removing all files from Inclusion List

IWL Inclusion List		김 Help
telnet.exe	^	Add
msimn.exe		RemoveAll
🗌 outlook.exe		
eudora.exe		
winpm-32.exe		
phoenix.exe		
thebat.exe		
jrew.exe		
Jre.exe		
inetinfo.exe	T	
Default Ok Cancel		

Add files to Inclusion List

To add executable files to the Inclusion List,

- 1. Enter the executable file name and then click **Add**. The executable file will be added to the Inclusion List.
- 2. Click OK.

The executable file will be added to the Inclusion List.





Delete files from Inclusion List

To delete executable files from the Inclusion List, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select executable files, and then click **Delete**.
 - A confirmation prompt appears.
- 2. Click OK.

The executable file will be deleted from the Inclusion List.

Remove all files from Inclusion List

To remove all executable files from the Inclusion List,

- 1. Click Remove All.
- A confirmation prompt appears.
- 2. Click **OK**.

All executable files will be removed from the Inclusion List.

Click Default to apply default settings, done during eScan installation. It loads and resetsNOTE the values to the default settings.





MWL Exclusion List

MWL (MicroWorld WinSock Layer) Exclusion List contains the name of all executable files which will not bind itself to **MWTSP.DLL**.

You can do the following activities:

- Adding files to Exclusion List
- **Deleting files** from Exclusion List
- Removing all files from Exclusion List

MWL Exclusion List		김 Help
]
INETINFO.EXE	A	Add
VHTTPD32.DLL		RemoveAll
NS-SLAPD.EXE		
DOWNLOAD.EXE		
SPOOLER.EXE	•	
Default Ok Cancel		

Adding files to Exclusion List

To add executable files to the Exclusion List,

- 1. Enter the executable file name and then click **Add**. The executable file gets added to the Exclusion List.
- 2. Click OK.

The executable file will be added to the Exclusion List.

Deleting files from Exclusion List

To delete executable files from the Exclusion List,

- 1. Select the appropriate file checkbox, and then click **Delete**. A confirmation prompt appears.
- 2. Click OK.

The executable file gets deleted from the Exclusion List.

Removing all files from Exclusion List

To remove all executable files from the Exclusion List,

1. Click **Remove All**. A confirmation prompt appears.





2. Click OK.

All executable files get removed from the Exclusion List.

Click **Default** to apply default settings, which are done during installation of eScan. It loads and resets the values to the default settings.





Notifications and Events

It lets you send emails to specific recipients when malicious code is detected in an email or email attachment. It also lets you send alerts and warning messages to the sender or recipient of an infected message.

lotifications Events		
/arning Notification Settings		
r Virus Alerts	Warning Mails	
	From To	
Show Alert Dialog-box	preiterie gewater com	
Mail Server Settings	Delete Mails From User	
SMTP Mail Server	Add	
SMTP Port	Delete	
User	RemoveAll	
Authentication(Opt.)		
Password(Opt.)		
	▼	
Attachment Removed Warning To Sender	1	
Attachment Removed Warning To Sender Attachment Removed Warning To Recipient		
Virus Warning To Sender		
Virus Warning To Recipient		
Content Warning To Sender		
✓ Content Warning To Recipient		
attrem.snd		
#Lines starting with # are comment lines.		*
#This file specifies warning sent to Mail-Sender by #eScan when it deletes attachments.		
#		
The attachment(s) that you sent with the following mail was deleted by eScan (not delivered to the recipient)		
The Mail came from : %f The Mail recipient : %t		
Subject of the Mail : %s Message-ID : %i		-
Received : %r		-11

Notifications

Notifications tab lets you configure the notification settings. You can configure the following settings:

Virus Alerts [Default]

This section contains **Show Alert Dialog box** option. Select this option if you want Mail Anti-Virus to alert you when it detects a malicious object in an email.

Warning Mails

Configure this setting if you want Mail Anti-Virus to send warning emails and alerts to a given sender or recipient. The default sender is **postmaster** and the default recipient is **postmaster**.

Mails Server Settings

Here you can configure the mail server settings for all the email notifications. The option sends a warning notification to the user through mail server setting.





Attachment Removed Warning to Sender [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want Mail Anti-Virus to send a warning message to the sender of an infected attachment. Mail Anti-Virus sends this email when it encounters a virus infected attachment in an email. The email content is displayed in the preview box.

Attachment Removed Warning to Recipient [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want Mail Anti-Virus to send a warning message to the recipient when it removes an infected attachment. The email content is displayed in the preview box.

Virus Warning to Sender [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want Mail Anti-Virus to send a virus warning message to the sender. The email content is displayed in the preview box.

Virus Warning to Recipient [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want Mail Anti-Virus to send a virus warning message to the recipient. The email content is displayed in the preview box.

Content Warning to Sender

Select this checkbox if you want Mail scanner to send a content warning message to the sender. The email content is displayed in the preview box.

Content Warning to Recipient [Default]

Select this checkbox if you want Mail scanner to send a content warning message to the recipient. The email content is displayed in the preview box.

Delete Mails from User

You can configure eScan to automatically delete emails that have been sent by specific users. For this, you need to add the email addresses of such users to the **Delete Mails From User** field. The **Add**, **Delete**, and **Remove All** buttons appear as dimmed. After you enter text in the **Delete Mails From User** field, the buttons get enabled.

Events

Events tab lets you define the settings to allow/restrict clients from sending alert for following events:

- Executable Allowed
- Website Allowed
- Cleaned Mail

By default, all events are selected.

Notifications & Events	👔 Help
Notifications Events	
Do not allow client to send event for	
Executable Allowed	
VebSite Allowed	
Cleaned Mail	
Default Advanced Setting OK Cancel	





0	Click Default to apply default settings, which are done during installation of eScan. It
NOTE	loads and resets the values to the default settings.

Advanced Settings

1 ¥
1 ~
0 🗸

Enable Caching of Unsent Events (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable automatic caching of unsent events.

Show 'Secured by eScan' on startup (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable the display of 'Secured by eScan' at the startup of the computers.

Show eScan Splash window (1 = Enable/0= Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable display of eScan Splash Window.

Send Only Defined Event Ids

It lets you send only the defined events such as File Antivirus IDs, Mail Antivirus IDs, and more.

Enable Gaming Mode (1 = Enable/0 = Disable)

It lets you Enable/Disable the gaming mode on the computer.





Schedule Update

The Schedule Update lets you schedule eScan database updates.

Automatic Download		Schedule Download		
Daily				
Weekly	Mon	Tue	Wed	🗌 Thu
	🗌 Fri	Sat Sat	Sun	
Monthly	1 .			
At	12:00 am	BY		

The updates can be downloaded automatically with Automatic Download [Default] option.

-OR-

The updates can be downloaded on a schedule basis with **Schedule Download** option. Select intervals and time basis as per your preferences.

Advanced Settings

Name	<u>Value</u>
Set bandwidth limit for download (in kb/sec)	
Retry schedule download (Default retry interval is 15 minutes)	15

Set bandwidth limit for download (in kb/sec)

It lets you define bandwidth limit for download on managed computers.

Retry schedule download (Default retry interval is 15 minutes)

It lets you define time to retry for download updates (Default retry interval is 15 minutes) on managed computers.





Tools

s 👔 Help		
RMM Settings		
Manual Start		
Auto Start User Acceptance Required		
Show RMM Connection Alert		
Dk Cancel		

The Tools lets you configure Remote Monitoring Management (RMM) Settings.

RMM Settings

The RMM settings let you configure default connection settings for connecting to client computers. You will get the following configuration options:

- **Manual Start**: If this option is selected by default, client endpoint users have to manually start the RMM service to establish a RMM connection.
- Auto Start: If this option is selected, RMM service will be started automatically and all client endpoints will be connected to your main eScan server.
- User Acceptance Required: If this checkbox is selected, a pop-up appears on client endpoint for RMM connection acceptance. If left unselected, pop-up doesn't appear and you get direct access to the client endpoint.
- Show RMM Connection Alert: If this checkbox is selected, a notification appears on client endpoint informing about active RMM connection. If left unselected, notification doesn't appear on client endpoint.

After making the necessary changes click **OK**. Click **Save**. The Policy Template gets saved.

RMM - Manual Start

To take a remote connection by using Manual Start option,

1. Tell the client endpoint user to right-click the eScan Protection Center icon 🕏 and click Start eScanRMM.

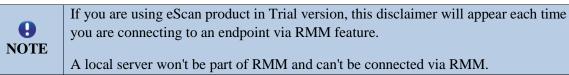




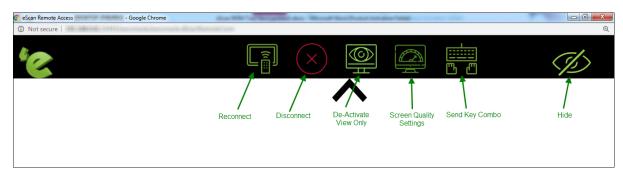


 After the client endpoint user has clicked Start eScanRMM, select the target endpoint and then click Client Action List > Connect to Client (RMM). Following disclaimer appears.

isclaimer
isclaimer
** The eScan RMM option is available for any number of devices during trial period.However, this option is not part of default eScan Corporate License. To use eScan RMM during contract period customer needs to purchase an Add-on License.
eScan RMM allows administrator to connect to the client system using web browser. It help administrator to see user(s) screen and/or control user(s) computer remotely to offer precise assistance During trial period Administratorget direct option connect to client b selecting Connect to Client(RMM) option available under "Client Action List". Once Administrator add the eScan RMM Add-on License to console, Administrator get option to add Client(s) toRMM license and get option to connect client under "Client Action List".
Accept Cano



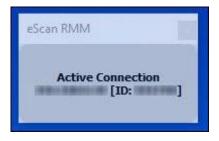
 Read the disclaimer thoroughly and then click Accept. Your default browser opens eScan Remote Access window (Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, MS Edge, etc.)







Following notification appears on client endpoint displaying IP address of RMM connecting endpoint and connection ID (If **Show RMM Connection Alert** option is selected).



RMM - Auto Start

If Auto Start option is selected, then client endpoints get automatically connected to your eScan server.

 Go to Managed Computers, select the target endpoint and then click Client Action List > Connect to Client (RMM).

RMM disclaimer appears.

 Read the disclaimer thoroughly and then click Accept. Your default browser opens eScan Remote Access window (Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, MS Edge, etc.)

After you are done performing an activity, click the **Disconnect** icon to end remote connection.

O NOTE To get detailed information about RMM feature, <u>click here</u>.





Assigning Policy Template to a group

There are two ways to assign the policy template to group.

Method 1

To assign a Policy to a group,

- 1. In the Managed Computers screen, click **Policy Templates**. Policy Templates window appears.
- 2. In the Policy Templates window, select a **Policy Template**.

Policy Templates				😒 Refresh 🛛 🛐 Hel
🗗 New Template 🛃 Prop	perties 🛃 Parent Policy 👘 D	elete Assign to Group(s)	Assign to Computer(s)	y Template Export To Y
Name of Template	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)
Q8	Jun 19 2021 06:07:27 PM	Jun 29 2021 01:01:43 PM	QA_TEXH	
SAMPLES	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Sangles_Team	

3. Click **Assign to Group(s)**.

Select Group window appears.

Assign template to group	김 Help
Select Group	
Ok Cancel	

 Select the group(s) and then click **OK**. The policy will be assigned to the selected group(s).





Method 2

To assign a Policy to the group,

- 1. In the Managed Computers folder tree, select a group.
- 2. Under the group, click **Policy**. Policy pane appears on the right side.

🛐 Action List 🔹 🦉 Client Action List 🔹 🛃 Policy Templates 🛃 Policy Criteria Templates								
Managed Computers Computers Computers Computers Client Computers Client Computers Client Computers	Policy		Sefresh 👔 Help					
± Tunux / Mac	Assigned Template	Assigned Template Date And Time of Assigned Template						
	Group Default Policy	Group Default Policy Jul 02 2021 11:24:52 AM						
	Select Criteria Criteria to be set in case of conflict Criteria Criteria Assigned Policy Ter		Date And Time of Assigned Criteria					

3. In the right pane, click **Select Template**. New Policy window appears.

New Policy	👔 Help
Policy Template Selection	
Group Default Policy SAME T	
Select Cancel	

 Select a policy template and then click Select. The default Policy Template for group will be saved and updated.





Assigning Policy Template to Computer(s)

To assign a policy template to computers,

1. In the **Policy Templates** window, select a policy.

y Templates				💲 Refresh
New Template 📑 Pro	operties 📑 Parent Policy 🕋 🛙	Delete 💕 Assign to Group(s) 💕	Assign to Computer(s)	y Template Export To 🗸
Name of Template	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)

2. Click Assign to Computer(s).

Assign Template to computer window appears.

Assign template to group	👔 Help
Select Group	
. In the second	
Ok Cancel	

- 3. Click Managed Computers.
- Select the computer(s) and then click **OK**. The policy template will be assigned to the selected computers.





Copy a Policy Template

To copy a Policy Template,

1. In the Policy Templates window, select a **Policy**.

y Templates				💲 Refresh 🚺
New Template 📑 Pri	operties 📑 Parent Policy 👘 🛙	Delete 💕 Assign to Group(s) 🛃	Assign to Computer(s) 🛃 Cop	y Template Export To 💙
Name of Template	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)
Name of Template	Created On Jun 19 2021 06:07:27 PM	Modified On Jun 29 2021 01:01:43 PM	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)

2. Click Copy Template.

New Template window appears displaying settings from the original template.

- 3. Enter a name for the template.
- 4. Make the necessary changes and then click **Save**. The template will be copied.

Exporting a Policy Template report

To copy a Policy Template,

1. In the Policy Templates window, select a policy.

icy Templates				💲 Refresh 💡
+ New Template 📑 Pro	operties Parent Policy 🔒	elete 🏼 Y Assign to Group(s)	Assign to Computer(s)	y Template Export To Y
Name of Template	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)
QA.	Jun 19 2021 06:07:27 PM	Jun 29 2021 01:01:43 PM	Q/A_TEXH	
	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Associate Report	

- 2. Click Export To.
- 3. Select the file format from the drop-down menu (HTML, PDF, and Excel).
- 4. The Policy template report will be generated.







Parent Policy

The Parent Policy lets you to implement a change in policy setting to multiple policies at the same time. For example, if you want to make a policy change in a single module like File Anti-Virus in multiple policies; you can do this all at a time using Parent Policy. To configure Parent Policy, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the Managed Computers screen, click **Policy Templates**. Policy Templates window appears.
- 2. In the Policy Template window, click **Parent Policy**.

. II					
Policy	y Templates				🝣 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
Ð	New Template 🕎 Proper	ties Parent Policy 🔂 Delete	💕 Assign to Group(s) 💕 Assi	ign to Computer(s) Copy Te	emplate Export To Y
	Name of Template	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)
	QA.	Jun 19 2021 06:07:27 PM	Jun 29 2021 01:01:43 PM	QA_TEXH	
	SAMPLES	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Jun 29 2021 12:25:32 PM	Samples_Team	

Policy Details		
File Anti-Virus Assign To Select Policy	Edit	Mail Anti-Virus Edit Assign To Select Policy
Anti-Spam Assign To Select Policy	Edit	Web Protection Edit Assign To Select Policy
FireWall Assign To Select Policy	Edit	EndPoint Security Assign To Select Policy
Privacy Control Assign To Select Policy	Edit	
Administrator Password Assign To Select Policy	Edit	ODS/Schedule Scan Assign To Select Policy
	Edit	

Properties (Parent Policy) window appears displaying all the policies.

- 3. Select and edit the required module according to your preferences.
- 4. Click **Assign To** drop-down and select the policies for which the parent policy changes should be applied.





Z File Anti-Virus					
Assign To	Select Policy 💌				
Anti-Spa	Filter Enter Key Word ✓ Check All X Uncheck All 😵				
FireWall]			
Assign To					
Privacy (Assign To					
		Þ			

5. Click OK.

The Parent policy will be updated and changes will be applied to all the policies selected.







Policy Criteria Templates

This button allows to add criteria template based on the endpoints conditions.

Adding a Policy Criteria Template (AND condition)

To define Policy Criteria Template, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers screen, click **Policy Criteria Templates**. Policy Criteria screen appears.

Policy Criteria				💲 Refresh	김 Help
H New Criteria	Delete Criteria	Assign To			
Name of Criteria	<u>Created On</u>	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)	

2. Click New Criteria.

Policy Criteria screen displays parameter for creation.

Policy Criteria		김 Help
Criteria Name: Description:		
Conditions for crite		
Save	Close	

- 3. Enter Name and Description.
- 4. Click **Add** drop-down.
- 5. Click Add AND Condition.





Specify Criteria screen appears.

Specify criteria	2 F	lelp
Type : Computer IP Address		
If the client computer has one of the IP addresses	listed below	
○ If all of the IP addresses of the client computer ar	e listed below	
If the client computer does not have any of the ad Condition	Idresses listed below	
	tent 🔺	
4	*	
		1
Add Edit Delete		
Ok Cancel		

- 6. Click the **Type** drop-down. It displays following options:
 - Computer IP Address
 - Management Server Connection
 - Users
 - Machine Name

Depending upon the option, the conditions and settings may vary.

Computer IP Address

This option let you display list of computer IP address connected to client computer.

- 1. Select the appropriate condition.
- 2. Click Add.

Address window appears.

Address		
Type :	IP Address 🗸	
IP Address :		
Ok Cancel		

- 3. Enter the IP address.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The Policy Criteria Template for an IP Address will be saved.

Edit – Clicking **Edit** lets you edit the IP address of the policy template from the list. **Delete** – Clicking **Delete** lets you delete the IP address of the policy template from the list.





Management Server Connection

It display the client computer connect to the management server.

Specify criteria 🔋 Hel	lp
Type : Management Server Connection 💙]
If the client computer can connect to the management server	
If the client computer can not connect to the management server	
Ok Cancel	

- 1. Select the appropriate condition.
- 2. Click **OK**.

The Policy Criteria Template for Management Server Connection will be saved.

Users

This option shows the list of username connected with client computer.

Specify criteria	👔 Help
Type : Users If the client computer has one of the Username listed below	
Condition	
4	+ }
Add Add AD users Edit Delete	
Ok Cancel	

Adding Local Users

1. To add local users, click **Add**. Username window appears.

Username	
Username :	
Ok	Cancel





- 2. Enter a Username.
- 3. Click **OK**. The local user will be added.

Adding Active Directory Users

To add Active Directory users, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click Add AD Users.
 - Add Active Directory Users window appears.

Add Active Directory Users		👔 He
Jser Accounts > Add Active Direc	ory Users	
Search Criteria		
User's name*:		
	For Example: user or user*	
Domain*:		
AD IP Address*:		
AD Admin User name*:		
	For Active Directory account: dom	ain\username
AD Admin Password*:		
Use SSL Auth.:		
AdsPort*:	389	
	305	
Search		
Search Results		
Users	Selected Users	
A	A.]
	<	
MDM (,	,
MDM Role*: Administrator	~	
Ok Cancel		(*) Mandatory Fiel

- 2. Enter data in mandatory fields.
- 3. Click Search.
- 4. Search Results section displays a list of discovered users in **Users** list. Select a user and then click button to add the user to **Selected Users** list.

Vice versa the added user can be moved from Selected Users to Users by clicking <
5. Click **OK**.

- The Policy Criteria Template for Users will be saved.
- Edit Clicking Edit lets you edit user details of the policy template from the list.

Delete – Clicking Delete lets you delete user of the policy template from the list.





Machine Name

This option show list of machine name connected to the client computer.

Specify criteria	🝸 Help
Type : Machine Name	
If the client computer has one of the machine name listed below Condition	
Machine Name	^
	-
Add Delete	
Ok Cancel	

1. Click Add.

Select Computer screen appears displaying all managed computers.

			X
Select Computer			👔 Help
Select Computer			
🗄 🧰 Managed Computers			^
🗋 📑 Willia Commun 7			
···· 🛅 Roaming Users			
🗄 🧰 Linux / Mac			
	Add		
	Remove		
			-
	1		
		Ok	Cancel

 Select the computer(s) to be added under this criterion and click Add > OK. The Policy Criteria Template for selected machines will be saved.





Specify criteria	_	elp
Type : Machine Name 🗸		
If the client computer has one of the machine name listed below		
Condition Machine Name	-	
1000000		
	-	
4	•	
Add Delete		
Ok Cancel		

3. Select the Machine Name. This enable **Delete** button.

4. Click **Delete**.

The machine will be deleted.





Adding a Policy Criteria Template (OR condition)

To define Policy Criteria Template, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Managed Computers screen, click **Policy Criteria Templates**. Policy Criteria screen appears.

Policy Criteria				💲 Refresh	김 Help
	<u> </u>				
🚹 New Criteria 📑 Properties	Delete Criteria	Assign To			
Name of Criteria	<u>Created On</u>	Modified On	<u>Assigned to Group(s)</u>	Assigned to Computer(s)	

2. Click New Criteria.

Policy Criteria screen displays parameter for creation.

Policy Criteria	👔 Hel
Criteria Name:	
Description:	
Conditions for crite	
Add 🗕 📑	it Delete
	Close
Save	Close

- 3. Enter Name and Description.
- 4. Click Add drop-down.
- 5. Click Add **OR Condition**.







Specify Criteria screen appears.

Specify criteria	(👔 Help
Type : Computer IP Address		
If the client computer has one of the IP addr	esses listed below	
○ If all of the IP addresses of the client comput	ter are listed below	
O If the client computer does not have any of t	he addresses listed below	
	Content	<u>.</u>
4	Þ	·
Add Edit D	elete	
Ok Cancel		

- 6. Click the **Type** drop-down. It displays following options:
 - Computer IP Address
 - Management Server Connection
 - Users
 - Machine Name

Depending upon the option, the conditions and settings may vary.

Computer IP Address

This option let you display list of computer IP address connected to client computer.

- 1. Select the appropriate condition.
- 2. Click Add.

Address window appears.

Address		
Type :	IP Address	v
IP Address :		
Ok Cancel		

- 3. Enter the IP address.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The Policy Criteria Template for an IP Address will be saved.

Edit – Clicking Edit lets you edit the IP address of the policy template from the list.

Delete – Clicking Delete lets you delete the IP address of the policy template from the list.





Management Server Connection

It display the client computer connect to the management server.

5	Specify criteria 🔐 Hel	p
	Type : Management Server Connection ♥ ■ If the client computer can connect to the management server ○ If the client computer can not connect to the management server	
(Ok Cancel	

- 1. Select the appropriate condition.
- 2. Click OK.

The Policy Criteria Template for Management Server Connection will be saved.

Users

This option shows the list of username connected with client computer.

Specify criteria	👔 Help
Type : Users If the client computer has one of the Username listed below Condition	
	.
Add Add AD users Edit Delete	•
Ok Cancel	

Adding Local Users

1. To add local users, click **Add**. Username window appears.

Username	
Username :	
Ok	Cancel

2. Enter a Username.





3. Click **OK**. The local user will be added.

Adding Active Directory Users

To add Active Directory users, follow the steps given below:

1. Click Add AD Users.

Add Active Directory Users window appears.

Add Active Directory Users		<u>?</u> Help
<u>User Accounts</u> > Add Active Directo	ry Users	
Search Criteria		
User's name*:]
	For Example: user or user*	
Domain*:]
AD IP Address*:]
AD Admin User name*:]
	For Active Directory account: domain\username	~
AD Admin Password*:		
Use SSL Auth.:		_
AdsPort*:	389	
Search		
Search Results		
Users	Selected Users	
	>	
	<	
MDM Role*: Administrator	v	
Ok Cancel	(*) !	Mandatory Field:

- 2. Enter data in mandatory fields.
- 3. Click Search.
- Search Results section displays a list of discovered users in Users list. Select a user and then click button to add the user to Selected Users list.

Vice versa the added user can be moved from Selected Users to Users by clicking

5. Click OK.

The Policy Criteria Template for Users will be saved.

Edit – Clicking Edit lets you edit user details of the policy template from the list.

Delete – Clicking Delete lets you delete user of the policy template from the list.





Machine Name

This option show list of machine name connected to the client computer.

Specify criteria	🝸 Help
Type : Machine Name	
If the client computer has one of the machine name listed below	
Condition	^
	* }
Add Delete	
Ok Cancel	

1. Click Add.

Select Computer screen appears displaying all managed computers.

Select Computer				lelp
Select Computer				
🗄 🧰 Managed Computers			-	
🗌 📑 With Control 7				
···· 🛅 Roaming Users				
🗄 🛅 Linux / Mac				
	Add Remove		Ŧ	
		Ok	Cancel	

2. Select the computer(s) to be added under this criterion and click Add > OK. The Policy Criteria Template for selected machines will be saved.





	į	
Specify criteria	👔 Hel	
		1
Type : Machine Name		
If the client computer has one of the machine name listed below Condition		
Machine Name	-	
✓ 10802 #807		
4	+	
Add Delete		
Ok Cancel		-

3. Select the Machine Name. This enable **Delete** button.

4. Click **Delete**.

The machine will be deleted.





Viewing Properties of a Policy Criteria template

To view the properties of a Policy Criteria Template, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select a policy criteria template.
- 2. Click Properties.

Image: Second	Policy Criteria				📚 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help	
Image: Control of the second	Properties Delete Criteria					
Jul Jul Jul O4:21:58 PM Jul Group Default Policy Managed Computers	Name of Criteria	Created On	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)	
	dame.	Jul - 04:21:58 PM	Jul 📑 2021 04:21:58 PM	Group Default Policy Managed Computers		

Policy Criteria window appears.

cy Criteria		<table-cell> He</table-cell>
Criteria Name: Description:	deme	
Conditions for crit		
	Edit i Delete	
O Condition	nt computer can connect to the management server	
Save	Close	

Make the necessary changes and click Save.
 The Policy Criteria template will be saved and updated.

Deleting a Policy Criteria template

To delete assigned policy criteria template, follow the steps given below:

The Policy Criteria window displays to which group or computer the template is assigned in Assigned to Group(s) or Assigned to Computer(s) column.

For explanation, we are following the procedure as per the screenshot below

- 1. Select a policy criteria template.
- 2. Click **Assign To** > **Groups**.





Policy Criteria				📚 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help	
Image: Properties Image: Properties Image: Properties Image: Properties Image: Properties Image: Properties					
Name of Criteria	Created On	Modified On	<u>Assigned to Group(s)</u>	Assigned to Computer(s)	
dama	Jul 3 200 04:21:58 PM	Jul 📲 202 04:21:58 PM	Group Default Policy Managed Computers		
			·		

Assign Criteria to Group window appears.

ssign Criteria to group	
Select Policy Template	
Group Default Policy	*
	*
Ok Cancel	

3. Click Group Policy Template > OK.

Assign Criteria to group window displays Managed Computers folder tree.

	gn Criteria to group	🛛 Help
Se	elect Group	
	🗄 🗹 🚞 Managed Computers	
	Ok Cancel	

- 4. Uncheck the selected group.
- 5. Click OK.





The Policy Criteria Template will no longer be assigned to any group. This enables **Delete Criteria** button.

P	olic	y Criteria				🤹 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
	Ð	New Criteria 💕 Prope	ties 📋 Delete Criteria 🛐 As	sign To 🔻		
	<u><</u>	Name of Criteria	<u>Created On</u>	Modified On	Assigned to Group(s)	Assigned to Computer(s)
	~	deme	Jul - 04:21:58 PM	Jul 📑 2020 04:21:58 PM	Group Default Policy Managed Computers	
Ľ	_				Managed Computers	

- 6. Select the template.
- 7. Click **Delete Criteria**.

A confirmation window appears.

Policy Criteria
Do you want to delete selected policy criteria(s)?
Ok Cancel

8. Click Ok.

The Policy Criteria Template will be deleted.





Unmanaged Computers

To install eScan Client, define policies and tasks on the basis of group, it is necessary to move computers to the created groups. You can move the computers from Unmanaged Computers to desired groups created in the Managed Computers using the following submodules:

- Network Computers
- IP Range
- Active Directory
- New Computers Found

Network Computers

This submodule displays a list of available networks. You can move the computers from the list of computers present in the Network Computers using the following steps –

- 1. In the navigation panel, click Unmanaged Computers > Network Computers.
- 2. Click Microsoft Windows Network.
- 3. Select the workgroup from where you want to move computers to the group created in Managed Computers section.

A list of computers appears.

Network Computers					💲 Refresh 👔	Help
₽ Search						
Action List - Refresh Client						
Metwork Computers	Computer Name	Groups	IP Address	<u>User name</u>	<u>eScan Status</u>	
<u>VMware Shared Folders</u> Microsoft Windows Network	##C#C				Unknown status	
Microsoft Windows Network Microsoft Windows Network Microsoft Windows Network	AC AN ANA				Unknown status	
Web Client Network	Alemen				Unknown status	
AIT HE CHAIL HENDIN	Aline PC				Unknown status	
	CONTLAC				Unknown status	
	C 67				Unknown status	

- 4. Select the computer(s) you want to move to the desired groups.
- 5. Click Action List > Move to Group. Select Group window appears.
- 6. Click Managed Computers tree to view the groups.





Select Group	김 Help
Move Computer(s) to Group	
New Group Ok Cancel	

7. Select the group where you wish to move the selected computer(s) and click **OK**. The selected computer(s) will be moved to the group.

Creating a New Group from the Select Group window

To create a new group from the Select Group window, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Select Group window, click **Managed Computers** > **New Group**.

Select Group	김 Help
Move Computer(s) to Group	
È • 🗃 Managed Computers	
New Group Ok Cancel	





Creating New Group window appears.

Creating New Group	👔 Help
Create New Group	
Ok Cancel	

- 2. Enter a name for the group.
- 3. Click OK.

A new group will be created.





IP Range

The **IP Range** submodule lets you scan the desired IP address or range of IP address and add the required computers to any of the managed groups. It also lets you add, search and delete an IP range.

Adding New IP Range

To add an IP range, follow the steps given below:

1. In the IP range screen, click **New IP Range.** Specify IP Range window appears.

Specify IP Range	🝸 Help
Starting IP Address*: Ending IP Address*:	
OK Cancel	(*) Mandatory Fields

- 2. Enter the Starting and Ending IP address.
- 3. Click OK.

The IP Range will be added.



Please enter the start and end IP address even if you want to search for single IP address, both the entries will have the same IP address in such a case. The selected IP Range will be added to the IP Range tree.

When you select the IP Range all computers present in that IP Range will be displayed on the interface in the right.

Other details like IP Address of the computer, its group, Protection status (Unmanaged/Unknown/Protected/Not installed, Critical/Unknown); the table also displays Status of all modules of eScan.

Moving an IP Range to a Group

To move an entire IP range to a group, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select an IP range.
- 2. Select the checkbox next to Computer Name column.
- Click Action List > Move to Group. Select Group window appears.





- 4. Select the destination group.
- 5. Click OK.

The IP range will be moved to the specified group.

Deleting an IP Range

To delete an IP range, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select an IP Range.
- 2. Click Delete IP Range.



A confirmation prompt appears.

:10443 says		
Do you really want to delete selected IP Rar	nge(s)?	
	ОК	Cancel

3. Click **OK**.

The IP range will be deleted.





Active Directory

The Active Directory submodule lets you add computers from an Active Directory.

Adding an Active Directory

To add an Active Directory, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click Unmanaged Computers > Active Directory.
- 2. Click Properties.

Active Directory		
	Action List 🔻 💕 Properties	
	🦾 💑 Active Directory	

Properties window appears.

Properties
🔂 Add 💽 Modify 🗊 Delete
Active Directory Domain Controller Address
ок

3. Click Add.

Login Settings window appears.

Login Settings		👔 Help
AD IP Address *:		
User name *:		
Password *:		
Confirm Password *:		
Use SSL Auth.:		
AdsPort*:	389	
OK Cancel		(*) Mandatory Fields

4. Fill in the required Login Credentials and click **OK**. The details including IP Addresses from active directory will be added instantly.





Properties	김 Help
🔂 Add 💽 Modify 🗊 Delete	
Active Directory Domain Controller Address	
192. 192.	
ОК	

- 5. Select the Active Directory and click **OK**.
 - The selected Active Directory will be added to the Active directory tree.
- 6. To view the details, click the **Active Directory**.

Active Directory								\$	Refresh	👔 Help
Action List 🔻 🛃 Properties 🔀 Refr	resh Cl	ient								
🗄 🦣 Active Directory		Computer Name	Groups	IP Address	<u>User name</u>	eScan Status	Version	Last Connection	(YYYY/M	M/DD)
🗄 👷 DC= arm (to marine) (to marine)		tasificati)			Unknown status					
🗠 💑 Chielbuiltin	Ľ									
ChielComputere										
n 🖓 Oute Comain Controllare										
🔬 Cheffundigetassuffutfrindige										
🗠 💑 Chindringhum										
🗠 🔬 (Chimianaliferand										
🗠 🚓 Chinimagad Sanica Acon										
Chimiterite Qualitate										
🚓 Chinifingram Cala										
🚓 (Chin System)										
🎪 (Chini Jacona										

Moving Computers from an Active Directory

To move computers from an Active Directory, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click an Active Directory.
- 2. Select the computers you want to move to other group.
- 3. Click Action List > Move to Group. Select Group window appears.
- Select the Group and Click **OK**. The selected computers will be moved to the selected group.





New Computers Found

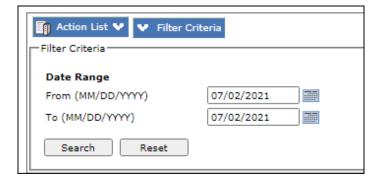
The New Computers Found submodule displays list of all new computers connected to the network. With the Action List drop-down you can set Host Configuration, Move Computers to a Group, view Properties and Refresh Client. You can also export the New Computers List to .xls file format.

After the computers are moved from Unmanaged Computers to groups under Managed Computers, you can assign it tasks, Set host configuration, Manage Policies, Deploy/Upgrade Client or deploy a Hotfix on all or any of the Managed Computer individually or in group.

Sea	irch										
0	Action List 💙 🔺 Filter (Criteria									
	Computer Name	IP Address	User name	Last Seen	Belongs To	eScan Status	<u>Version</u>	Last Connection	Installed Directory	Monitor Status	Anti-Span
		192,008,0.030		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					
		192 048 0 25		02 Jul 2021 13:54:45	Server	Unknown status					
		192,008,0.00		02 Jul 2021 13:54:26	Server	Unknown status					
		192,008,0.070		02 Jul 2021 13:54:28	Server	Unknown status					
	💻 marian	192 000 0 000		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					
		192.008.0.076		02 Jul 2021 13:54:28	Server	Unknown status					
		192		02 Jul 2021 13:54:28	Server	Unknown status					
		192.008.0.238		02 Jul 2021 13:25:43	Server	Unknown status					
		192 048 6 179		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					
		192.008.0.48		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					
		192 048 0 130		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					
		192.008.0.74		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					
	📕 and i to particular	192 008 0 202		02 Jul 2021 13:54:46	Server	Unknown status					
		192.008.0.00		02 Jul 2021 13:54:27	Server	Unknown status					

Filter Criteria

The Filter Criteria lets you filter new computers found according to date range.



- 1. Select appropriate date in From and To fields.
- 2. Click Search.

A list of computers discovered by eScan in the date range will be displayed.

Action List

This drop-down provides following options:

- Set Host Configuration: To learn more, <u>click here</u>.
- **Deploy/Upgrade Client**: To learn more, <u>click here</u>.





- Move to Group: To learn more, <u>click here</u>.
- **Refresh Client**: To learn more, <u>click here</u>.
- **Export to Excel**: This option lets you to export the status of particular system into Excel reports.
- **Properties**: To learn more, <u>click here</u>.





Report Templates

The Report Templates module lets you create template and schedule them according to your preferences. The module also consists of pre-loaded templates according to which the report can be created and scheduled.

Repo	ort Templates	🦉 Properties 🤹 Refresh	🝸 Help
₽	New Template Treate Schedule Properties Delete		
	Template Name		
	Virus Report		
	Update Report		
	Scan Report		
	Web Protection Report		
	Application Control Report		
	Attachment Control Report		
\Box	Anti-Spam Report		
	Mail Anti-Virus Report		
	USB Control Report		
	Group Summary Report		
	Hardware Report		
	Software Report		
	File Activity Report		
	Computers with Critical Status Report		
	Asset Changes (Software) Report		
	Asset Changes (Hardware) Report		
	Top 10 Summary Report		
	Anti-Ransomware Report		
	Application Access Report		





Creating a Report Template

To create a Report Template, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Report Templates**.
- 2. Click **New Template**. New Template screen appears.

olates >New Template		
Name		
New Template Name :* New Template		
nplate		
Report Type		
Virus Report	O Anti-Spam Report	
O Update Report	Mail Anti-Virus Report	
Web Protection Report	USB Control Report	
O Group Summary Report	Application Control Report	
O Hardware Report	Attachment Control Report	
Scan Report	Software Report	
Computers with Critical Status Report	File Activity Report	
 Asset Changes (Hardware) Report 	Asset Changes (Software) Report	
	O Top 10 Summary Report	
	 Anti-Ransomware Report Application Access Report 	
riod & Sort By		
Date Options-		
Today	O This Week	
O This Month	O This Week O This Year	
O This Month O Since Installed		
O This Month	O This Year	
This Month Since Installed Last Month Sort By	O This Year O Date Range	
This Month Since Installed Last Month Sort By Date	O This Year O Date Range O Virus	
This Month Since Installed Last Month Sort By	O This Year O Date Range	
 This Month Since Installed Last Month Sort By Date Computer 	O This Year O Date Range O Virus	
 This Month Since Installed Last Month Sort By Date Computer 	O This Year O Date Range O Virus	

- 3. Enter a name for the template.
- 4. Select a **Report Type**. Depending upon the report type, the additional setting varies.
- 5. After making the necessary selections/filling data, click **Save**. The template will be created according to your preferences.





Creating Schedule for a Report Template

The Report Template module lets you create a new schedule for the report templates. To learn more, <u>click here</u>.

Viewing Properties of a Report Template

To view the properties of Report Template, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select the Report Template whose properties you want to view.
- 2. Click Properties.

Properties screen appears.

roperties			🝸 He
aport Temp	lates > Virus Report Properties		
لم ال	General Report Period & Sort By		
	Report Name		
	Report Name : Vir	rus Report	
	Selected Template Type:	VIRUS REPORT	
	Created:	6/30/2021 5:33:18 PM	
	Modified:	6/30/2021 5:33:18 PM	
Save	Cancel		



3. After making the necessary changes, click **Save**. The Report Template's properties will be updated.

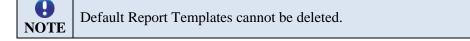
Deleting a Report Template

To delete a Report Template, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select the template you want to delete.
- 2. Click Delete.

A confirmation prompt appears.

3. Click **OK**. The Report Template will be deleted.







Report Scheduler

The Report Scheduler module lets you create schedule, update and run the task according to your preferences.

Creating a Schedule

To create a Schedule,

1. In the Report Scheduler screen, click **New Schedule**. New Schedule screen appears.

New Schedule	김 Help	*
Report Scheduler > New Schedule		
Report Name		
New Report Name :* New Report		I
Settings		
Select a Template for creating a Report		
USB Control Report Update Report Group Summary Report Hardware Report Software Report Scan Report File Activity Report File Activity Report		

- 2. Enter a name for new report.
- 3. In the **Settings** section, select preferred templates.
- 4. In the Select Condition section, select a condition for groups or specific computers.

Select Condition
Generate a Report for Groups
O Generate a Report for a List of Computers
Select Target Groups
😟 🗋 Managed Computers
1 L





5. In the **Send Report by email** section, fill the required information to receive reports via email.

Report Sender*:	presidente generation com	
Report Recipient*:		Add
	preserve com	Delete
Mail Server IP Address:	192. 44	
Mail Server Port:	25	
User Authentication:		
Password Authentication:		
* For Example: user@yourcompany.com		

- 6. Select the preferred report format.
- 7. In **Report Scheduling Settings** section, make the necessary changes.

Report Scheduling Settings		
Enable Scheduler	O Manual Start	
Daily		
O Weekly	Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun	
O Monthly	1 4	
C Last Day of Month		
At	12:00 pm	
Save Cancel		(*) Mandatory Fields

8. Click Save.

New schedule will be created.





Viewing Reports on Demand

To view a report or a set of reports immediately,

1. Click **Report Scheduler** > **View & Create**.

New Schedule screen appears.

Report Scheduler > New Schedule	
Settings	
Select a Template for creating a Report	
İ Virus Report	
: • Web Protection Report	
🗄 🗹 Anti-Spam Report	
🗄 🗌 Mail Anti-Virus Report	
🗄 🗹 Application Control Report	
±. Attachment Control Report	
🗓 🗆 USB Control Report	
···· 🗋 Update Report	
···· Group Summary Report	
Hardware Report	
Select Condition	
 Generate a Report for Groups Generate a Report for a List of Computers 	
Select Target Groups	
🗄 🗋 🦰 Managed Computers	
Create Schedule Cancel View	(*) Mandatory Fields

2. Select the **Template** options, the **Condition** and the **Target Groups**.

3. Click View.

A new window appears displaying the created report.

Clicking Create Schedule lets you create a new Schedule.





Managing Existing Schedules

The Report Scheduler module lets you manage the existing schedules.

	rt Scheduler		📚 Refre	· · ·
E p	Start Task 📮 Results	💕 Properties 🍵 Delete	🗗 New Schedule 🏼 🋐 View & Create	
	Schedule Name	Report Recipient	Scheduler Type	View
	Neise Taure rt	presidentia generates com	Automatic Scheduler	<u>View</u>

Generating Task Report of a Schedule

To generate a task report, select the preferred report schedule name and then click **Start Task**. A task window appears displaying the name of the report being generated.

Viewing Results of a Schedule

To see the results of a schedule and its time stamp, select the report schedule and then click **Results**. Results screen appears.

Results(New Report)									
Report Scheduler >Results									
<u>Status</u>	Time								
Completed	7/7/2021 1:35:05 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 1:21:47 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 1:17:39 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 1:12:01 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 1:08:25 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 1:02:29 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 12:53:48 PM								
Completed	7/7/2021 12:37:36 PM								
Cancel									





Viewing Properties of a Schedule

To view the properties of a schedule,

- 1. Select a schedule.
- 2. Click Properties.

Properties screen appears.

Properties		👔 Help
Report Scheduler > Properties		
General Schedule Setting	Groups	
Schedule Name :*	Hanvi Bargeorff	
Created:	07/03/21 11:17:33 AM	
Status:	Task not performed yet	
Ok Cancel		(*) Mandatory Fields

The properties screen displays general properties and lets you configure Schedule, Settings and Groups settings.

Deleting a Schedule

To delete a report schedule,

- 1. Select a schedule.
- 2. Click **Delete**.
 - A confirmation prompt appears.

Report Scheduler
Do you want to Delete the Selected Task(s) ?
Ok Cancel

3. Click OK.

The schedule will be deleted.





Events and Computers

eScan Management Console maintains the record of all the events sent by the client computer. Through the events & computers module, the administrator can monitor the Events and Computers; this module lets you sort the computer with specific properties.

Events & Computers		💲 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
Settings 🛐 Edit Selection	-	
🗄 🚡 Events & Computers	Events & Computers	
	Events Status	
Computers Selection	Computer Selection	
🗄 💼 Software/Hardware C		
	Software/Hardware Changes	
	Violations	
•		
	1 Information	Critical

Events Status

The Event Status subfolder is divided into following sections:

- Recent
- Critical
- Information

Recent

The Recent section displays both Information and Critical events.

Critical 🝪

The Critical section displays Critical events and immediate attention. For example, Virus detection, Monitor disabled.

The Critical events can be filtered on the basis of date range and the report can be exported in .xls or .html format.

Information 🕕

The Information section displays basic information events. For example, Virus database update, Status.





Computer Selection

The Computer Selection subfolder displays computers that fall under different categories. It lets you select the computer and take the preferred action. You can also set the criteria for each section and sort the computer accordingly.

Events & Computers		💲 Refresh	
Settings 🚺 Edit Selection	*		
Events & Computers	Computer Selection		
Events Status	Computers with the "Critical Status"		
- 🔝 Computers with the	Secondary Server Status (Not Updated)		
	Computers with the "Warning Status"		
Computers with the	记 Database are Outdated		
Many Viruses Detect	记 Many Viruses Detected		
Not Connected for a	记 No eScan Antivirus Installed		
	2 Not Connected for a long time		
Update Agent Status	Not Scanned for a long time		
🗄 🛅 Date / Time Violations	Protection is off		
	记 Update Agent Status		
•			
	(1) Information	Critical	

The Computer Selection subfolder consists following sections:

- Computers with the critical status
- Secondary Server Status (Not Updated)
- Computers with Live Status
- Computer with warning status
- Database is outdated
- Many Viruses Detected
- No eScan Installed
- Not connected for a long time
- Not scanned for a long time
- Protection is off
- Update Agent Status

Computers with the critical status

This section displays computers marked with Critical status.

Secondary Server Status (Not Updated)

A secondary server receives downloads from the primary server and further distributes to the client computers. If the secondary server is not updated, it will be mentioned in the log.

Computers with Live status

This section displays whether the computers present in the network are online or offline.





8

To get the details of the specific computers' status, select **Computers with Live Status** option. This will display the computers with default online status along with other details such as IP Address, Group, Description, and more. To display all the endpoints in the network, you can use filter options that filters based on **Status Type**.

After selecting the computer from the list, you can choose **System Action List** drop-down option from the top panel. This option allows you to perform specific set of actions on the selected endpoints.

The required action can be performed only if the endpoint system is online.

NOTE The \bigcirc symbol indicates that the endpoint is online and \bigotimes symbol indicates that the system is offline.

The following actions can be performed on the online system according to the need of the user:

- Log off: This option will log off the system from the current user.
- Force Log off: This option will log off the current user forcefully.
- Lock Machine: This option will lock the system automatically.
- Shutdown Machine: This option will shut down the system.
- Force Shutdown Machine: This option will shut down the system forcefully.
- Restart Machine: This option will restart the system.
- Force Restart Machine: This option will restart the system forcefully.
- **Hibernate Machine**: This option will hibernate the system that will consume less power than sleep mode and resumes back to the previous states when you start-up the system.
- **Stand By Machine**: This option will put the machine in the standby mode. The standby mode is similar to as that of Hibernate mode.

Computers with warning status

This section displays computer with a warning status.

Database is outdated

This section displays computers whose virus database is outdated.

Many Viruses Detected

This section displays the computers whose virus count has exceeded.

No eScan installed

This section displays computers on which eScan is not installed.

Not connected for a long time

This section displays the computers which didn't connect to the eScan server for the set duration.

Not scanned for a long time

This section displays the computers which weren't scanned for the set duration.

Protection is off

This section displays the computers on which File Protection is disabled.

Update Agent Status

This section displays the status of computers assigned as Update Agent.





The additional settings vary depending upon the Computer Status.

Edit Selection

This drop-down menu allows to configure various option based on selected options. The following options are present in the menu:

• **Protection**: This option displays the protection status of the selected computer.

Protection	? F	lelp
Computers Status Critical		
Monitor Disabled;Not Scanned for a long time		
4		•
Close		

• **Events**: This option displays the events that were performed in the particular computer.

lecent Events	(#111#2-1	341)			1 - 10 of 622 🔢	pag
<u>Date</u>	<u>Time</u>	<u>User's name</u>	<u>Event Id</u>	Module Name	Description	<u>c</u>
1 7/3/2021	12:52:35	maalt	File Anti-Virus (10154)	update	New virus database taken and applied (2025/07/05 07-52) (7.89053)	Up
1 7/3/2021	12:52:35	realt	File Anti-Virus (10740)	winclient	jingi(MicroWorld()Http:///282.048.0.0395-2225/MINC/WAY	e
7/3/2021	12:52:34	mail	File Anti-Virus (10154)	update	New virus database taken and applied (2025/07/05 07-52) (7.89053)	υ
7/3/2021	12:52:34	mail	File Anti-Virus (10740)	winclient	/regit/Micro/Micro/d/http:///282.548.0.598-2225/MinC/MiNC	e
7/3/2021	11:30:18	mail	File Anti-Virus (10154)	update	New virus database talen and applied (2025/07/03 05-05) (7.89035)	U
1 7/3/2021	11:30:18	mail	File Anti-Virus (10740)	winclient	jingt(MicroWorld]Http:///282.048.0.0395-2225/MinC/WWK	e
7/3/2021	11:30:18	mail	File Anti-Virus (10740)	winclient	/regit/MicroWorld[Hittp:///282.548.ds.598-2225/MinC/MoV	e
7/3/2021	11:30:18	mail	File Anti-Virus (10154)	update	New virue database tales and applied (2021/07/03 05-05) (7.89035)	υ
7/3/2021	10:30:14	real	File Anti-Virus (10740)	winclient	/regit/MicroWorld[Http:///182.548.0.595.2225/MINC/MINC	e
7 /3/2021	10:30:14	reall	File Anti-Virus (10154)	update	New virus database taken and applied (2020/07/02 05-05) (7.89039)	U

- **Deploy/Upgrade Client**: To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.
- Check Connection: This option will verify if the client machine is online or offline.

	?
	_
Connecting to ComputerAN Connection : Successful	

- **Remove from Group**: To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.
- Connect to Client (RMM): To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.





- Force Download: To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.
- On Demand Scanning: To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.
- Send Message: To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.
- **Properties**: To learn about this option, <u>click here</u>.

Software/Hardware Changes

This subfolder displays all software/ hardware changes that occurred on computers. It consists following sections:

- Software Changes
- Hardware changes
- Existing System Info

Events & Computers		🤤 Refresh	_? Help
Settings Diff Edit Selection			
🗄 🛅 Events & Computers	Software/Hardware Changes		
Events Status	🔂 Software Changes		
. Software/Hardware Cl	E Hardware Changes		
📜 Software Changes 📜 Hardware Changes	Existing System Info		
	1 Information	🔀 Critical	

Software Changes

This section displays software changes i.e. installation, uninstallation or software upgrades.

Hardware changes

This section displays hardware changes that occurred on computers. For example, IP address. Hard Disk, RAM etc.

Existing System Info

This section displays a computer's existing hardware information.





Violations

Date/Time Violations

This subfolder consists Date/Time Violations that displays client computers whose users attempted to modify date and time.

Events & Computers								💲 Refresh	👔 Help
Edit Selection 🔻									
Events & Computers	▲ Filter Cri	teria			^	Export Option			
E. Computers Selection	Date / Time Vic	lations Eve	ents			1 - 1 of 1 ∢ page	1 of 1 ⊨ Ro	ws per page:	10 🗸
E Software/Hardware Changes	<u>Date</u>	<u>Time</u>	Machine Name	IP Address	<u>User's name</u>	Event Id	Module Name	Client Action	
🗄 🛅 Date / Time Violations	7/6/2021	13:05:53	WIN-QA007 ╉	192	W] to get 11.5 to the	File Anti-Virus (1805)	eScan Monitor	Device/Compu	iter Modif

Settings

You can define the Settings for Events, Computer Selection and Software/Hardware changes by clicking on the **Settings** option and defining the desired settings using the tabs and options present on the Events and Computer settings window.

Event Status Setting

Basically, events are activities performed on client's computer.

nts & Computers Settings		?
Events Status Computer Selection	Software/Hardware Changes	
Events		
Events Name Recent 🗸		
Number Of Records	1000	
Save Close		

On the basis of severity, the events are categorized in to the following types:

- **Recent:** It displays both critical and information events that occurred recently on managed client computers.
- **Information:** It displays all informative types of events, such as virus database update, status, and so on.

Steps to define event status settings:

Perform the following steps to save the event status settings:

- 1. Select the appropriate Events Name.
- 2. Enter the number of events that you want to view in a list, in the Number of Records field.





3. Click Save.

The settings get saved.

Computer Selection

Events & Computers Settings	👔 Help
Events Status Computer Selection Software/Hardware	Changes
Computers	
Computers Status Computers with the "Critical Status"	
Check for eScan Not Installed	
Check for Monitor Status	
Check for Not Scanned	
Check for Database Not Updated	
Check for Not Connected	
Database Not Updated from more than 7	days
System Not Scanned from more than 7	days
System Not Connected from more than 7	days
Number Of Records	
Save Close	

The Computer Selection lets you select and save the computer status settings. This module lets you do the following activities:

Critical Status: It displays a list of computers that are critical in status, as per the criteria's selected in computer settings. Specify the following field details.

- Check for eScan Not Installed: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems under managed computers on which eScan has not been installed.
- Check for Monitor Status: Select this checkbox to view the client systems on which eScan monitor is not enabled.
- Check for Not Scanned: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems which has not been scanned.
- Check for Database Not Updated: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems on which database has not been updated.
- **Check for Not Connected**: Select this checkbox to view the list of eScan client systems that have not been communicated with eScan server.
- **Database Not Updated from more than**: Enter the number of days from when the database has not been updated.
- **System Not Scanned for more than**: Enter the number of days from when the system has not been scanned.





- **System Not Connected for more than**: Enter the number of days from when the client system has not been connected to eScan server.
- Number Of Records: Enter the number of client systems that you want to view in the list.

Warning Status: It displays the list of systems which are warning in status, as per the criteria's selected in computer settings. Specify the following field details:

- Check for Not Scanned: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems which has not been scanned.
- Check for Database Not Updated: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems on which database has not been updated.
- Check for Not Connected: Select this checkbox to view the list of eScan client systems that have not been communicated with eScan server.
- Check for Protection off: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems on which protection for any module is inactive.
- **Check for Many Viruses**: Select this checkbox to view the list of client systems on which maximum viruses are detected.
- **Database Not Updated from more than**: Enter the number of days from when the database has not been updated.
- **System Not Scanned for more than**: Enter the number of days from when the system has not been scanned.
- **System Not Connected for more than**: Enter the number of days from when the client system has not been connected to eScan server.
- Number Of Virus: Enter the number of viruses detected on client system.
- Number Of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Database are Outdated: It displays a list of systems on which virus database is outdated. Specify the following field details:

- **Database Not Updated from more than**: Enter the number of days from when the database has not been updated.
- Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Many viruses Detected: It displays a list of systems on which number of viruses exceeds the specified count in computer settings. Specify the following field details:

- Number of Virus: Enter the number of viruses detected on client system.
- Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

No eScan Antivirus Installed: It displays the list of systems on which eScan has not been installed. Specify the following field detail:

• Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Not connected for a long time: It displays the list of systems which have not been connected to the server from a long time. Specify the following field detail:

- **System Not Connected from more than**: Enter the number of days from when the system has not been connected.
- Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Not scanned for a long time: It displays the list of systems which have not been scanned from a long time, as specified in computer settings. Specify the following field details:





- **System Not Scanned for more than**: Enter the number of days from when the system has not been scanned.
- Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Protection is off: It displays the list of systems on which protection is inactive for any module, as per the protection criteria's selected in computer settings. It shows the status as "Disabled" in the list. Specify the following field details.

- Check for Monitor Status: Select this checkbox if you want to view the client systems on which eScan monitor is not enabled.
- **Check for Mail Anti-Phishing**: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which Mail Anti-Phishing protection is inactive.
- **Check for Mail Anti-Virus**: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which Mail Anti-Virus protection is inactive.
- Check for Mail Anti-Spam: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which Mail Anti- Spam protection is inactive.
- **Check for Endpoint Security**: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which Endpoint Security protection is inactive.
- **Check for Firewall**: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which Firewall protection is inactive.
- **Check for Proactive**: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which Proactive protection is inactive.
- **Check for Web Protection**: Select this checkbox if you want to view the list of client systems on which protection of Web Protection module is inactive.
- Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Steps to define computer settings

To save the computer settings, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click Computers Selection tab.
- 2. Select a type of status for which you want to set criteria, from the **Computer status** dropdown.
- 3. Select the appropriate checkboxes, and then enter field details in the available fields. For more information, refer [Types and criteria of computer status] section.
- 4. Click **Save**. The settings will be saved.

Software/ Hardware Changes Setting

You can set these settings, if you want to get updates on any changes made in the software, hardware, and to existing system.





Events Status	Computer Selection	Software/Hardware Changes	
Updates			
Software/	Hardware Changes Softwa	are Changes 🗸	
Numbe	er Of Days	1 davs	
	r Of Records	1000	

The Software/ Hardware Changes enable you to do the following activities: Type of Software/Hardware Changes

- Software changes
- Hardware changes
- Existing system info

To Change software/hardware settings, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Click the Software/Hardware Changes tab.
- 2. Specify the following field details.
 - Software/Hardware Changes: Click the drop-down and select the changes made.
 - **Number of Days**: Enter the number of days, to view changes made within the specified days.
 - **Number of Records**: Enter the number of client systems that you want to view in the list.
- 3. Click Save.

The settings get saved.

Existing system info: It displays the list of existing systems on which software/hardware changes made for any module, as per the protection criteria's selected in computer settings. Specify the following field details.

Number of Records: Enter the number of client system that you want to view in the list.

Performing an action for computer

To perform an action for a computer, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select a computer.
- 2. Click Edit Selection drop-down. To learn more <u>click here</u>.
- 3. Click the preferred action.





Tasks for Specific Computers

The Tasks for Specific Computers module lets you create a new task for computer(s) according to your preferences.

Tasks For Specific Compu			\$	Refresh 김 Help
🛃 New Task 🚺 Start	Task Properties	Results 🛱 Delete		
Task Name	Pending	Completed	Schedule Type	

Creating a task for specific computers

To create a task for specific computer(s), follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the navigation panel, click Tasks for Specific Computers.
- 2. Click New Task.





New Task Template form appears.

F C	Tal. Tanalata		?
For Specific Computers >Ne	w Task Template		
Name			
Task Name:*	New Task		
jned Tasks			
File Anti-Virus Stat	us		
Enabled			
Disabled			
Mail Anti-Virus Stat	tus		
Enabled			
Disabled			
Anti-Spam Status			
Enabled			
Disabled			
Web Protection Sta	itus		
Enabled			
Disabled			
Endpoint Security S	Status		
C Enabled			
Disabled			
Firewall Status			
O Disable Firewa	all		
-	d Filter Mode of Firewall		
_	ctive Filter Mode of Firewall		
Alternate Download	d Status		
Enabled			
Disabled			
Start/Stop Another	Server		
Start Server			
Stop Server			
Set Update Server			
Add Server Name/		168.0.155	
Remove Server Na	ame/IP		
Scan			
Memory	/ Scan	Registry	
System		Scan network drives	
Scan Lo		Computer StartUp	
	an System Drive		
	an Data Drives		
Option			
Scan Ar	rchives		
	ut Down After Scan Completion		
Scan Of			
Force Client to Dov	vnload Update		





- 3. Enter a name for task.
- 4. In the **Assigned Tasks** section, select the modules and scans to be run.
- 5. In the **Select Computers/Groups** section, select the computers/groups on which the tasks should be run and then click **Add**.

Select Computers/Groups			
È □ 🚰 Managed Computers	Add Remove	4	×

6. In the **Tasks Scheduling Settings** section, configure the schedule settings.

Enable Scheduler		() Manual Start	
Daily				
O Weekly	Mon	🗌 Tue	Wed	Thu
	🗌 Fri	Sat	Sun	
O Monthly	1 💙			
• At	12:00 pm			

7. Click Save.

The task will be saved and run for specific computers according to your preferences.





Viewing Properties of a task

To view Properties of a task, select the task and click **Properties**.

w Task		?
ks For Specific Computers > Properties		
Conoral Callel Calle		
General Schedule Machines	Settings	
Task Name	Nation Tanak	
Task Creation Time:	07/ 04:32:27 PM	
Status:	Task not performed yet	
Last Run:		
Save Close		

This section will have following tabs to configure:

- **General**: This tab will display details of the task created and provides details about the task name, task creation time, status, and last run.
- Schedule: This tab allows to change the scheduler setting for the particular task.
- Machines: This tab allows to add or remove the endpoints added to the particular task.
- Settings: This tab allows to modify or select the modules and scans to be run.



To run a scheduled task manually, select the task and then click Start Task.

Viewing Results of a task

To view Results of a task, select the task and click Results.

Task Results (New Task)						
Tasks For Specific Computers > Task Results						
Client Computers	Group	Status	Date/Time			
AN	Managed Computers	Not Performed Yet				
ED#_CLIENT	Managed Computers	Not Performed Yet				

This option will provide the summary details about the task like clients computers, group to which computers belong, status of the task, and more.

Deleting a task for specific computers

To delete a task, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Tasks for Specific Computers screen, select the task you want to delete.





	ks For Specific Computers	🗢 Refi			
	Properties Results Delete				
	<u>Schedule Type</u>				
	Native Tassili	2	0	Automatic Scheduler	<u>Task Status</u>

2. Click **Delete**.

A confirmation prompt appears.

Tasks For Specific Computers
Do you want to Delete the Selected Task(s) ?
Ok Cancel

3. Click OK.

The task will be deleted.





Asset Management

This module displays list of hardware configuration, software installed, software version number and a software report for Microsoft software installed on Managed Computers. The Asset Management module consists following tabs:

- Hardware Report
- Software Report
- Software License
- Software Report (Microsoft)

Hardware Report

The Hardware Report tab displays hardware configuration of all Managed Computers.

A	isset Management 😵 Refresh 👔 Help									
Hardware Report Software Report Software License Software Report (Microsoft)										
	▲ Filter Criteria				▲ Exp	ort Option				
	Computer Details							1 - 2 of 2 📧	page 1 of 1 + +	Rows per page: 10 💙 🔺
	Computer Name	Group	IP Address	User's name	Operating System	Service Pack	OS Version	OS Installed Date	Internet Explorer	Processor
	DESKTOP-LR63AH4	QA	192.168.0.199	DESKTOP-LR63AH4\Administrator	Windows 10 Home Edition 64-bit	Build 10586.164	Client:10.0	28 Aug 2020 13:09:36	IE:11.162.10586.0	Intel(R) Core(TM) i7-7700 C
	QA-BHUSHAN	Managed Computers	192.168.0.151	QA-BHUSHAN\QARAO	Windows 7 Professional 64-bit	Build 7600.0	Client:6.1	30 May 2019 14:07:31	IE:8.0.7600.16385	Intel(R) Core(TM) i3 CPU 53

The tab displays following details of managed computers:

- Computer Name
- Group
- IP Address
- User name
- Operating System
- Service Pack
- OS Version
- OS Installed Date
- Internet Explorer
- Processor
- Motherboard
- RAM
- HDD
- PC Identifying Number
- Motherboard Serial No
- Network Speed
- Disk Free Space
- PC Manufacturer
- PC Model
- MB Manufacturer
- Graphic Card Details
- Machine Type
- BitLocker Status
- Software

To view the list of Software along with the installation dates, click View in Software column.





Filtering Hardware Report

To filter the Hardware Report as per your requirements, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria			^	Export Option		
Filter Criteria						
Select All	In	clude All 💉			#Add Asse	et Information
Computer Name	* •	Include 🖌	✓	Internet Explorer	*	Include 💙
🗹 User's name	*	Include 💙	✓	OS Version	*	Include 💙
Operating System	*	Include 🗙	✓	Processor	*	Include 🗸
Motherboard	*	Include 💙	✓	Local Adapter	*	Include 💙
RAM	*	Include 🗙	✓	Wifi Adapter	*	Include 💙
Group	*	Include 🗙	✓	USB Adapter	*	Include 🗙
PC IdentifyingNumber	*	Include 🗙	✓	Motherboard Serial No	8	Include 🗸
🗹 OS Type	*	Include 🗙	✓	HDD		
IP Address	*	Include 💙	✓	OS Installed Date		
Service Pack	*	Include 🗙	✓	Disk Free Space		
PC Manufacturer	*	Include 🗙	✓	PC Model	*	Include 💙
MB Manufacturer	*	Include 💙	✓	Graphic Card Details	*	Include 💙
Machine Type	*	Include 🗙	✓	BitLocker Status		
Search Reset					(*) V	ïew All Items

Select the parameters you want to be included in the filtered report.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the report.

After making the necessary selections, click **Search.** The Hardware Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria in all field, click Reset.

Exporting Hardware Report

To export the Hardware Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria		♥ Export Option	1
Export Option			
	O PDF	HTML	Export

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





Software Report

The Software Report tab displays list of Software along with the number of computers on which they are installed.

Hardware Report Software Report Software Li	icense Software Report (Microsoft)
▲ Filter Criteria	Export Option
Software Details	1 - 10 of 10 ((page 1 of 1)) Rows per page: 10 ♥
Software Name	Computer Count
Brave	1
Client Authentication Agent	1
Dropbox	1
eScan Corporate - 360	1
eScan Corporate for Windows	2
Google Chrome	3
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2	1
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Native Client	1
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Setup (English)	1

To view the computers on which the specific software is installed, click the numerical in Computer Count Column.

Computer list window appears displaying following details:

- Computer Name
- Group
- IP Address
- Operating System
- Software Version
- Installed Date

Filtering Software Report

To filter Software Report, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria		Export Option		
Filter Criteria Software Name Computer Name OS Type	* * *	Include 💙 Include 💙 Include 💙	Group By Software Name Computer Name Group	
Search Reset				(*) View All Items

The Software Report can be filtered on the basis of Software Name or Computer Name.





Software Name

Entering the Software name displays suggestions. Select the appropriate software.

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computer(s).

OS Type Enter the OS type.

Group By

The results can be grouped by Software name, Computer name or Group. If Group option is selected, the report can be filtered for a specific group.

After entering data in all fields, click **Search**. The Software Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria in all field, click **Reset**.

Exporting Software Report

To export the Software Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria		✓ Export Option
Export Option		
O Excel	HTML	Export Detailed Report

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

OR

To export a detailed report, select the preferred option and then click **Export Detailed Report**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





Software License

The Software License tab displays list of Software Licenses of managed computers.

set Management		💲 Refresh 📲
Hardware Report Software Report Software Lie	ense Software Report (Microsoft)	
Filter Criteria	▲ Export Option	
		1 - 3 of 3 ((page 1 of 1)) Rows per page: 10 ♥
icense Key	Software Name	Computer Count
B VB	Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	1
<u>1</u> <u>X7</u>	Windows 10 Home Edition 64-bit	1
7 <u>4</u> <u>GT</u>	Windows 7 Professional 64-bit	1

The log displays License Key, Software Name and Computer Count.

To see more details of the computer's license key installed, click the numerical value in License Key or Computer Count column.

Filtering Software License Report

To filter Software Report, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria		▲ Export Option	
Filter Criteria			
Software License Key	*	Include 🗸	
Software Name	*	Include 🗸 🖂 Group By	
Computer Name	*	▼ Include ▼ Group	
IP Address	*	Include 🖌	
OS Type	*	Include 🗙	
Search Reset			(*) View All Items

Software License Key

Entering the license key displays suggestions. Select the appropriate key.

Software Name

Entering the Software name displays suggestions. Select the appropriate software.

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computer(s).

IP Address

Entering the IP address displays suggestions. Select the appropriate IP address.

OS Type Enter the OS type.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the report.

Group By

If Group option is selected, the report can be filtered for a specific group.





After entering data in all fields, click **Search**. The Software License Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria in all the fields, click Reset.

Exporting Software License Report

To export the Software License Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria	✓ Export Option
Export Option	
O Excel O PDF 💿 HTML	Export Detailed Report Vindows OS Vicrosoft Office

Select whether you want report for **Windows OS** and **Microsoft Office.** Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

OR

To export a detailed report, select the preferred option and then click **Export Detailed Report**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





Software Report (Microsoft)

The Software Report (Microsoft) displays details of the Microsoft Software installed on the computers.

set Management	💲 Refresh 🛛 👔
Hardware Report Software Report S	ftware License Software Report (Microsoft)
MS Office Software Report Micro	oft OS
▲ Filter Criteria	 Export Option
	1 - 1 of 1 ((page 1 of 1)) Rows per page: 20 ♥
Software Name	Computer Count

The tab consists following subtabs:

MS Office Software Report - It displays Microsoft software name and computer count.

Microsoft OS - It displays Operating System, Service Pack, OS version and computer count.

Filtering Software Report (Microsoft)

To filter Software Report (Microsoft), click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria		A Export Optio	on	
Filter Criteria				
Software Name	Microsoft Office*	Include 💙	Group By	
Computer Name	*	▼ Include ¥	Group	
Search Reset				(*) View All Items

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computer(s).

Group By

If this option is selected, the report can be filtered for a specific group.

After entering data in all fields, click **Search**. The Software Report (Microsoft) will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria in all the fields, click Reset.

Exporting Software Report (Microsoft)

To export the Software Report (Microsoft), click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.





▲ Filter Criteria		✓ Export Option
Export Option		
O Excel	HTML	Export Export Detailed Report

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

OR

To export a detailed report, select the preferred option and then click **Export Detailed Report**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.

Filtering Microsoft OS Report

To filter the Microsoft OS report, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

▼ Filter Criteria		▲ Export Option		
Filter Criteria				
Operating System	*	Include 🗙		
Computer Name	* •			
Service Pack	*	Include V Group		
OS Version	*	Include 🗙		
Search Reset		(*)	View All Items	

Operating System

Entering the operating system name displays list of suggestions. Select the appropriate OS.

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computer(s).

Service Pack

Entering the service pack name displays list of suggestions. Select the appropriate Service Pack.

OS Version

Entering the OS version displays list of suggestions. Select the appropriate OS version.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the report.

Group By

If **Group** option is selected, the report can be filtered for a specific group.

After filling all the fields, click **Search**. The Microsoft OS report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria in all the fields, click Reset.





Exporting Microsoft OS Report

To export the Microsoft OS Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria		👻 Export Opt	ion
Export Option			
O Excel	O PDF	HTML	Export

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





User Activity

The User Activity module lets you monitor Print, Session and File activities occurring on the client computers. It also provides the reports of the running applications. It consists following submodules:

- Print Activity
- Session Activity
- File Activity
- Application Access Report

Print Activity

The Print Activity submodule monitors and logs print commands sent by all computers. It also lets you filter the logs on the basis of Computer name, Printer and Username. Furthermore, the module lets you export a detailed print activity report in XLS, PDF, and HTML formats. The log report generated consist information such as Print Date, Machine Name, IP Address, Username, Printer Name, Document Name along with number of Copies and Pages.

Print Activity		Settings	+	👔 Help
▲ Filter Criteria	▲ Export Option			
	1 - 1 of 1 ∢ ∢ page	1 of 1 → → Rov	vs per page: 🚺	10 🗸
Printer Name	2	<u>Copies</u>	Pages	
NPUBLICIER (PP Laser Dat. HDD WHIGH)	5	<u>i</u>	<u>5</u>	

Viewing Print Activity Log

To view the Print log of a Printer, click its numerical value under **Copies** or **Pages** column. Print Activity window appears displaying details.

lachine Name : *(Inclu	ide)			Export To:	Select 🖌	Export
				1 - 5 of 5 ((page 1 of 1)	N Rows per page: (10 🔨
<u>Client Date</u>	Machine Name	<u>IP Address</u>	<u>User name</u>	Printer Name	Document Name	<u>Copie</u>
05/08/21 4:23:03 PM	Qeistin	192. *** ***	QA 211 Mulminial alor	NPIBERCOB (HP LaserCall #DD WHELE+)	Untitled - Notepad	1
05/08/21 4:22:40 PM	Q.M. IEE H	192.048.0.007	Q = C = d = d = in all selor	NPIBERCEB (HP LaserCall #DD IMEEL+)	Untitled - Notepad	1
05/08/21 4:22:09 PM	Qenesie	192. *** ***	QA CONTRACTOR	N	Untitled - Notepad	1
05/08/21 4:21:42 PM	Q = = = =	192.000.007	Qit (1) If administrator	NFIBERCOB (HP LawerCall #DD IMRELY)	Untitled - Notepad	1
05/08/21 4:21:31 PM	0.0	192.000.007	On the subminished or	NEIBBACOR (HE Lanariat 400 WHIGH)	Untitled - Notepad	1

Exporting Print Activity Log

To export this generated log,

- 1. Click the **Export to** drop-down.
- 2. Select a preferred format.
- 3. Click **Export**.

A success message appears.







Exported Successfully Click here to Open/Download

4. Click the link to open/download the file.

Filtering Print Activity Log

To filter the print activity log, click **Filter Criteria**. Filter criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria	▲ Export Option	
Filter Criteria		
Computer Name Printer User name]
Date Range From (MM/DD/YYYY) 07/03/2021 To (MM/DD/YYYY) 07/03/2021		
Search Reset	(*) View All Item	15

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computer.

Printer

Enter the printer's name.

User Name Enter the User's name.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a Machine or Printer lets you include or exclude it from the log.

Date Range

To search the log between specific dates, select **Date Range** checkbox. Afterwards, click the **calendar** icon and select **From** and **To** dates.

After filling all fields, click **Search**. The Print activity log will be filtered and generated according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria fields, click Reset.

Group By

To view results by specific printer, select **Printer**, Date Range and then click **Search**. To view results by specific user name, select **User name**, Date Range and then click **Search**.

Exporting Print Activity Report

To export the generated log, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.





▲ Filter Criteria	3		✓ Export Option
Export Option —			
O Excel		HTML	Export Export Detailed Report

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

OR

To export a detailed report, select the preferred option and then click **Export Detailed Report**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.

Print Activity Settings

Print Activity Settings lets you keep track of printers by adding them in a group and assigning it an alias name. The printers can be added or removed from this alias group.

To configure Print Activity Settings:

1. In the Print Activity screen, at the top right corner, click **Settings**. Printer Merge Setting window appears.

ias Name					
		Alias List		Printer List	
	Add		Remove	Add	Remove
arrest					
(►	•	►		
Save					

- 2. Enter name in Alias Name field.
- 3. Select printer(s) for the alias.
- 4. Click **Add**. The printer(s) will be added to the alias.
- Click Remove. The printer(s) will be removed from the alias/printer list.
- Click Save. The Print Activity Settings will be saved.





Session Activity Report

This submodule monitors and logs the session activity of the managed computers. It displays a report of the Operation type, Date, Computer name, Group, IP address and event description. With this report the administrator can trace the user Logon and Logoff activity along with remote sessions that took place on all managed computers.

Viewing Session Activity Log

In the navigation panel, click User Activity > Session Activity Report.

The log displays list of session activities and type of operation performed. Options for Filtering or Exporting the log in desired formats are also present on the same interface.

▲ Filter Criteria			▲ Export Opt	ion	
				1 - 10 of	11 H (page 1 of 2) H Rows per page: 10 🗸
Operation Type	Client Date	Computer Name/Ip	Group	IP Address	Description
Session LogOn	03/07/21 12:50:17 PM	WIR-QADD?	Qii	192.008.0.09	User LogOn User's name: WI
Session LogOff	03/07/21 10:55:49 AM	WIR COURT	Q#M	192.048.0.89	User LogOff User's name: WI
Remote Session Disconnect	03/07/21 10:55:48 AM	WING MILL?	QAM	192.000.0.00	
Remote Session Connect	03/07/21 10:55:47 AM	WIN-QADD?	Q#_TE#M	192.)##.0.#5	Remote Session Connect User's name: WI Name of Remote PC: WI IP of Remote PC: 192.
Remote Session Disconnect	03/07/21 10:55:34 AM	WIN-COULT?	Q.MTEMM	192.008-0-89	
Remote Session Connect	03/07/21 10:55:33 AM	WIN-QADD*	Qil_TEI M	192.048.0.89	Remote Session Connect User's name: WI Name of Remote PC: WI IP of Remote PC: 192.
Start up	03/07/21 10:43:23 AM	WINCOMMERSER	Managed Computers	192.008.0.078	
Session LogOn	03/07/21 10:43:09 AM	WINCOLANGER	Managed Computers	192.008.0.099	User LogOn User's name: W)
Start up	03/07/21 10:42:13 AM	WING MINT	Q=_==M	192. 000 0 00	
Shut Down	03/07/21 10:37:44 AM	WIN COLONADOR R	Managed Computers	192.008.0.099	

Filtering Session Activity Log

To filter session activities, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria			Export Option	
Filter Criteria	*	✓ Include ✓✓ Include ✓	 IP Address Group 	* Include V * Include V
Description Date Range From (MM/DD/YYYY) To (MM/DD/YYYY)		07/03/2021		
Search Reset				(*) View All Items

Filter Criteria lets you filter and generate the log according to your preferences. The checkbox selected will be added as a column in the report.

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computers.





Operation Type Click the drop-down and select the preferred activities.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the log.

IP Address

Enter the IP address in this field.

Group

Enter the group's name or click ... and select a group.

Date Range

To search the log between specific dates, select **Date Range** checkbox. Afterwards, click the **calendar** icon and select **From** and **To** dates.

After filling all fields, click **Search**. Reset all filter criteria fields, click **Reset.**

Exporting Session Activity Report

To export the generated log, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

 Filter Criteria 		👻 Export Opti	on
Export Option			
	O PDF	HTML	Export

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





File Activity Report

The File Activity module displays a report of the files created, copied, modified, and deleted on managed computers. File Activity report will be generated when Record files copied is enabled in endpoint security. Additionally in case of a misuse of any official files can be tracked down to the user through the details captured in the report. Select and filter the report based on any of the details captured.

Viewing File Activity Log

In the navigation panel, click User Activity > File Activity Report.

The log displays list of files and the type of operation performed on them. Options for Filtering or Exporting the log in desired formats are also present on the same interface.

					1 - 1	.0 of 51 ∢ (pag	ge 1 of 6 ► ► Rows per page: 10	~
<u>Client Date</u>	Computer Name/Ip	Group	IP Address	<u>User's name</u>	File Action Type	Drive Type	Source File	D
6/19/2021 6:11:04 PM	PRASHANT-QA	Qn_manM	192.000.000	PRASE and ator	Сору	Fixed Drive	C:\Users\Administrator\"	C:
6/19/2021 6:11:13 PM	PREDMINISTRA	Q=_==M	192.000.000	PRASMINE of administrator	Modify	Fixed Drive		C
6/19/2021 6:11:18 PM	PRESIDENT	QAM	192.000.000	PRASE and ator	Delete	Fixed Drive		C:
6/21/2021 11:17:06 AM	With Quality	Q#M	192.008.0.01	WINCOMICS	Modify	Fixed Drive		C
6/22/2021 11:04:10 AM	With Call	Q=_=E=M	192.000.000	WING CONTRACTOR	Delete	Network Drive		W
6/22/2021 11:04:10 AM	With Quality	Q#M	192.008.0.01	WINGSMITT	Delete	Network Drive		//
6/22/2021 11:04:10 AM	With Canal P	Qn_manM	192.000.000	With condition and	Delete	Network Drive		W
6/22/2021 11:05:11 AM	With Quality	Q=_==M	192.	With Condition	Delete	Network Drive		//
6/23/2021 11:29:58 AM	With California	QAM	192.000.000	With Constants in second	Create	Fixed Drive	NewFile	C:
6/23/2021 11:33:55 AM	With Canal 7	Qn_manM	192,008,0.05	With Call 11 Page	Modify	Fixed Drive		C:

Filtering File Activity Log

To filter file activities, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria		▲ Export Option	
Filter Criteria			
Computer Name	* Include 🗸	IP Address	* Include ¥
✓ User's name	* Include 🗸	Group	* Include 🗸
File Action Type	* 👻 🚽 Include 🗸	🗹 Drive Type	* 🔹 🐨 Include 🗸
Source File	* Include 🗸	Destination File	* Include 🗸
Application	* Include 🗸		
Date Range From (MM/DD/YYYY) To (MM/DD/YYYY)	07/03/2021		
Search Reset	we fields (Note: By enabling this option page	oading can get delayed)	(*) View All Items

Filter Criteria lets you filter and generate the log according to your preferences. The checkbox selected will be added as a column in the report.

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computers.

Username

Enter the username of the computer.

File Action type

Click the drop-down and select a preferred file action.





Source File Enter the source file's name.

Application Enter an application's name.

Include/Exclude Selecting **Include/Exclude** for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the log.

IP Address Enter an IP address.

Group Enter the group's name or click ... and select a group.

Drive Type Click the drop-down and select the drive type.

Destination File Enter the file path.

Date Range

To search the log between specific dates, select **Date Range** checkbox. Afterwards, click the **calendar** icon and select **From** and **To** dates.

After filling all fields, click **Search**. Reset all filter criteria fields, click **Reset**.

This checkbox **Enable search by typing keywords on above fields** allows you to search by typing keywords.

Select "Enable search by typing keywords on above fields" option page loading can get delayed.

Exporting File activity Report

To export the generated report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria		👻 Export Op	tion
Export Option			
O Excel	O PDF	HTML	Export

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





Application Access Report

The Application Access Report module gives the detailed view of all the applications accessed by the computers in the Managed Computers.

Viewing Application Access Report

In the navigation panel, click User Activity > Application Access Report.

The log displays list of files and the type of operation performed on them. Options for Filtering or Exporting the log in desired formats are also present on the same interface.

Filter Criteria	Export Option
	1 - 9 of 9 ((page 1 of 1) → Rows per page: 100 ¥
Application Name	Total Duration (DD:HH:MM:SS)
Dropbox	00:00:06:10
Google Chrome	00:04:04:12
Internet Explorer	00:04:20:22
Notepad	00:00:00:23
Qt Qtwebengineprocess	00:00:03:47
Remote Desktop Connection	00:00:00:44
Secunia PSI Tray	00:02:22:45
Windows Command Processor	00:00:21:22
WordWeb	00:02:30:56

By clicking on the duration present under **Total Duration (DD:HH:MM:SS)** column, you will get the details of the computer name accessed the app and duration.

	Application Name >> Dropbox	
Export To:Select 🗙 Exp		
1 - 1 of 1 ∢ ∢ page 1 of 1 ⇒ > Rows per page:		
Computer Name Total Duration (DD:HH:		Total Duration (DD:HH:MM:SS)
	WINGED AND BERNER	00:13:50:41

Again, if you click on the duration, you will get detailed view of the app accessed by the computer along with the date, time, and application path.

Computer List >> W a Material R				
	Export To:			
1 - 1 of 1 + (page 1 of 1) → Rows per page: 100				e 1 of 1 → → Rows per page: 100 ∨
Application Name	Start Time	End Time	Total Duration (DD:HH:MM:SS)	Application Path
Anglanik.exe	09/07/21 11:51:05 AM	09/07/21 12:05:14 PM	00:00:14:08	C:\Program Files\1000 and 1000 and .exe
Close				

You can export this report in various format such as PDF, CSV, and HTML.





Filtering Application Access Report

To filter file activities, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

▼ Filter Criteria	▲ Export Option	
Filter Criteria Application Name Computer Name	Include V Include V	Group By Application Name Computer Name
Date Range From (MM/DD/YYYY) To (MM/DD/YYYY)	07/03/2021 07/03/2021	
Search Reset		(*) View All Items

Filter Criteria lets you filter and generate the log according to your preferences. The checkbox selected will be added as a column in the report.

Application Name

Entering the Application name displays suggestions. Select the appropriate application.

Computer Name

Click the drop-down and select the preferred computer(s).

Group By

The results can be grouped by Application name or Computer name.

Date Range

To search the log between specific dates, select **Date Range** checkbox. Afterwards, click the calendar icon and select **From** and **To** dates.

After entering data in all fields, click **Search**. The Application Access Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria fields, click Reset.

Exporting Application Access Report

To export the generated report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria		♥ Export Option	I. Construction of the second s
Export Option			
	O PDF	HTML	Export

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





Patch Report

The Patch Report module displays the number of windows security patches installed and not installed on managed computers. This will help an administrator identify the number of vulnerable systems in the network and install the critical patches quickly.

tch Management			💲 Refresh	? н	
Patch Report	Patch Report				
Filter Criteria		▲ Export	▲ Export Option		
1 - 20 of 272 H (page 1 of 14) H Rows per page: 20					
Patch Name	Applied Count	Not Applied Count	Not Applicable Count	^	
KB958644	0	0	5		
KB929969	0	0	5		
KB958687	0	0	5		
KB921883	0	0	5		
KB912919	0	0	5		
KB902400	0	0	5		
KB905749	0	o	5		
KB899588	0	o	5		
KB890047	0	o	5		
KB885250	0	o	5		
KB873333	0	0	5		
KB888113	0	0	5	-	

Patch Report

The Patch report tab displays the Patch Name, Applied Count, Not Applied Count and Not Applicable Count. Clicking the numerical displays the patch name, details about the computer, the group it belongs to, IP address and User's name.

Computer List >> Not Applicable Count For >> KB958644				
	Export To:Select 🗸 Export			
1 - 5 of 5 ∢ (page 1 of 1) > Rows per page: 20 ♥				
Computer Name	Group	IP Address	<u>User's name</u>	Operating System
ESCHN_CLIENT	Managed Computers	192.000.000	ESCAR_CLIDHT Administrator	Windows XP Professional x64 Edition 64-bit
Philametrian	Managed Computers	192.000.0000	PRESIDENT of ediminial alter	Windows 7 Home Basic Edition 32-bit
WIN-EDGANERUER	Managed Computers	192.008.0.075	WHI ESCHREPUER (edministration	Windows 8 Professional 32-bit
WIN-QADE?	Managed Computers	192	W	Windows 8.1 Professional 64-bit

Filtering Patch Report

To filter the Patch Report as per your requirements, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

♥ Filter Criteria	Export Option
Patch Name * Include V Computer Name * Include V	Group By Patch Name Computer Name
Search Reset	(*) View All Items

Enter the Patch Name and Computer Name to be included in the filtered report.





Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the report.

After making the necessary selections, click **Search.** The Windows Patch Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Clicking **Reset** button reset all the filter criteria.

Exporting Windows Patch Report

To export the Windows Patch Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria			✓ Export Option
Export Option			
O Excel		HTML	Export Detailed Report

Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

OR

To export a detailed report, select the preferred option and then click **Export Detailed Report**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.

Other than security patch – for all patch Microsoft patch based on events File AV > Advanced Settings

A	Advanced Setting					
	C	Send Windows Security Patch Events (1-KB patches;2-Security Update;4 Update;16-Service Pack;31-All)	-Hotfix;8-			





All Patch Report

The All Patch Report tab displays all Microsoft patches based on following specific events.

- 1-KB patches
- 2-Security Update
- 4-Hotfix
- 8-Update
- 16-Service Pack
- 31-All

ch Management	💲 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
Patch Report All Patch Report	
▲ Filter Criteria	A Export Option
	0 - 0 of 0 ((page 0 of 0)) Rows per page: 20 ♥
Patch Name Computer	Count
There are no items	to show in this view.
	Patch Name Computer

Filtering All Patch Report

To filter the All Patch Report as per your requirements, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

▼ Filter Criteria	▲ Export Option	
- Filter Criteria Patch Name Computer Name	* Include V * V Include V	Group By Patch Name Computer Name
Search Reset	Note : To enable All Patch Report Configure policy under File Antiv	(*) View All Items virus>Advanced Setting>Send Windows Security Patch Events.

Enter the Patch Name and Computer Name to be included in the filtered report.

•	To enable Windows All Patch Report Configure policy by going to File Antivirus>
NOTE	Advanced Setting>Send Windows Security Patch Events.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the report.

After making the necessary selections, click **Search.** The Patch Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Reset all filter criteria fields, click Reset.

Exporting All Patch Report

To export the All Patch Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria			✓ Export Option
Export Option			
O Excel		HTML	Export Export Detailed Report





Select the preferred option and then click **Export**.

OR

To export a detailed report, select the preferred option and then click **Export Detailed Report**. A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





Notifications

This module lets you configure notifications for different actions/incidents that occur on the server. The Notifications module consists following submodules:

- Outbreak Alert
- Event Alert
- Unlicensed Move Alert
- New Computer Alert
- Configure SIEM
- SMTP Settings

Outbreak Alert

If the virus count exceeds the limits set by you, an outbreak email notification will be sent to the recipient.

To set an outbreak alert, follow the steps given below:

1. In the navigation panel, click **Notifications** > **Outbreak Alert**. Outbreak Notification screen appears.

OutBreak Notification				
OutBreak Alert Settings				
Send Notification, If virus count exceeds threshold value within the defined time duration				
Count 25 Time Duration 1 Day(s) V	Configure SMTP Settings			

- 2. Select the checkbox Send notification.
- 3. Enter the preferred values in **Count** and **Time Limit** field.

Auto Isolation Settings				
Auto Isolation for Outbreak Send Outbreak, If virus count exceeds threshold value within the defined time duration Count 25 Time Duration 1 Day(s) V Automatically restore outbreak prevention after 24 V hours(s)	View Auto Isolated Endpoints			
Client(s) list excluded from Auto Isolation Add Add Remove				
e.g.; Host Name Host Name with wildcard IP Address IP Address Range				
Save Cancel				

- 4. In Auto Isolation Settings section, select checkbox Auto Isolation for Outbreak.
- 5. Enter the preferred values in **Count** and **Time Limit** field.
- 6. Select the value in Automatically restore outbreak prevention after hours(s) field.





- 7. You can also add/remove clients list to exclude it from auto isolation in the below table. To do the same refer the following:
 - Enter the host name, IP Address, or IP address range and click Add.
 - To delete a particular client, select the client and click **Remove**.
- 8. After configuring accordingly, click **Save.** The Outbreak Alert Settings will be saved.

•

NOTE

In order to receive notification emails, it is necessary to configure SMTP settings. Learn more about SMTP Settings by clicking <u>here</u>.

To view the Auto-Isolated Endpoints, click **View Auto Isolated Endpoints** hyperlink. The list of auto-isolated endpoints will be displayed.





Event Alert

This submodule lets you enable email notifications about any event that occurs on the client computers connected to the server.

Event Notification				
Events Alert Settings				
Enable email alert Notification	Configure SMTP Settings			
Save Cancel				

To enable the event alert,

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Notifications** > **Event Alert**.
- 2. Select the checkbox **Enable email alert Notification**.
- 3. Select the checkbox **Send Information in subject line**. This checkbox enable after selecting enable email alert notification.
- 4. Select the events from the list for which you prefer an alert.

Events	Events Alert Settings				
	Enable email alert Notification <u>Configure SMTP Settings</u> Send Information only in subject line				
		vent Ids	hich email alert is required		
		Event Id	Description	-	•
		100	ESCAN_DUMMY_EVENT		1.1.1
		1	MWAV_FOUND_MALWARE		
		2	MWAV_FOUND_VIRUS_AND_DELETED		
		3	MWAV_FOUND_VIRUS_AND_CLEANED		
		4	MWAV_FOUND_ADWARE		
		5	MWAV_FOUND_ERROR		
		6	MWAV_FOUND_VIRUS_AND_RENAMED		
		7	MWAV_FOUND_ADWARE_AND_DELETED		
		8	MWAV_LAST_COMPUTER_SCAN		
		9	MWAV_START		
		10	MWAV_SUMMARY		
		501	SCHED_MWAV_FOUND_MALWARE		
		502	SCHED_MWAV_FOUND_VIRUS_AND_DELETED		
		503	SCHED_MWAV_FOUND_VIRUS_AND_CLEANED		
		504	SCHED_MWAV_FOUND_ADWARE		-
					- 11



5. Select the required hosts or group.

All Hosts Selected Hosts Select Computers	
Image: Computers Image: Image Computers	
Save Cancel	

6. Click Save.

The Event Alert Settings will be saved.

an

Enterprise Security

2





Unlicensed Move Alert

This submodule lets you enable notification alert when a computer automatically moves to Unlicensed Computers category based on the setting done (under events and computers) for the computer which is not connected to the server for a long time.

Unlicense Move Notification	👔 Help
Unlicense Move Alert Settings	
Send notification for unlicensed computers.	<u>Configure SMTP Settings</u>
Save Cancel	

To enable the unlicensed move alert,

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Notifications** > **Unlicensed Move Alert**.
- 2. Select the checkbox Send notification for unlicensed computers.
- 3. Click Save.

The Unlicensed Move Alert Settings will be saved.





New Computer Alert

This submodule lets eScan send you a notification alert when a new computer is connected to the server within the IP range mentioned under the Managed Computers.

New Computers Notification	🝸 Help	
New Computers Alert Settings		
Send new Computers added notification within the shown time Time Limit 1 Day(s) V	Configure SMTP Settings	
Save Cancel		

To enable the new computer alert, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Notifications > New Computer Alert**.
- 2. Select the checkbox Send new Computers added notification within the shown time.
- 3. Enter the preferred values in Time limit field.
- 4. Click Save.

The New Computer Alert Settings will be saved.





Configure SIEM

SIEM technology provides real-time management of security events generated for hardware changes and applications installed/uninstalled/upgraded where eScan is installed. eScan is equipped with variety of features that facilitate real-time monitoring, correlating captured events, notifications and console views and provides long-term storage, analysis and reporting of data.

Configure SIEM		褶 Help
Settings		
 Enable event forward to SIEM / SYSLOG Server Add IP Address Add Hostname SIEM / SYSLOG Server IP Address SIEM / SYSLOG Server UDP port 	192. ####################################	
Save Cancel		

To configure SIEM, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Notification** > **Configure SIEM**.
- 2. Select the **Enable event forward to SIEM/SYSLOG Server** checkbox.
- 3. After selecting the checkbox, it will enable the rest of the options that can be configured. You can enter the details of the SIEM/SYSLOG Server.
- 4. Click Save.

The SIEM settings will be saved.





SMTP Settings

This submodule lets you configure the SMTP settings for all the email notifications.

SMTP Settings		김 Help
SMTP Settings		
Sender:	presidente com	
Recipient:	pri-line com	
SMTP Server:	192	
SMTP Port:	25	
Use SMTP Authent User name: Password: Test		
Save Cancel		

To configure the SMTP settings, follow the steps given below:

- 1. In the navigation panel, click **Notifications** > **SMTP Settings**.
- 2. Enter all the details.
- 3. Click Save.

The SMTP Settings will be saved.

To test the newly saved settings, click Test.





Settings

The Settings module lets you configure general settings. It contains following submodules.

- **EMC Settings**: This submodule lets you define settings for FTP sessions, Log Settings, Client Grouping and Client connection settings.
- Web Console Settings: This submodule lets you define settings for web console timeout, Dashboard Settings, Login Page settings, SQL Server Connection settings, SQL Database compression settings.
- **Update Settings**: This submodule lets you define settings for General Configuration, Update Notifications, and Scheduling.
- Auto-Grouping: This submodule lets you define settings for Grouping of computers after installation of eScan client is carried out.
- **Two-Factor Authentication**: This submodule lets you to add extra layer of protection to your endpoints.





EMC Settings

The EMC (eScan Management Console) Settings lets you configure the eScan Management Console. You can configure the FTP settings, Bind to IP Settings, Log Settings, Client Grouping and Client Connection Settings.

You can bind announcement of FTP server to particular IP by selecting the IP address in the list. However, you can choose to leave it as 0.0.0.0, which mean it will announce on all available interface/IP.

EMC Settings	👔 Help	
EMC Settings		
Allow log upload from clients Maximum ftp download session allowed by clients 0 0 = Unlimited Bind IP 0.0.0.0 v		
LOG Settings Delete the user settings and user log files after uninstalling. No of days Client logs should be kept 5		
Client Grouping Group Clients by NetBIOS DNS Domain		
Client Connection Settings Increase Thread count 10 (1-100)		
Increase Query Interval 10 (In seconds) (1-100)		
Save Cancel		

FTP Settings

This setting lets you approve the log upload from client computers. It also lets you set the maximum FTP download sessions allowed for client computers. (Note: 0 means unlimited)

Bind IP Settings

This setting lets you bind an IP address. Click the drop-down and select the preferred IP address for binding. The default IP address is 0.0.0.0.

Log Settings

This setting provides you with the option to delete the User settings and Log files after uninstallation of eScan from the computer. To enable the above setting, select the checkbox. After selecting the checkbox, you can store client logs for the preferred number of days.





Client Grouping

This setting lets you manually manage domains and computers grouped under them after performing fresh installations.

Select **NetBIOS**, if you want to group clients only by hostname.

Select DNS Domain, if you want to group clients by hostname containing the domain name.

Client Connection Settings

This setting lets you modify **Thread Count** and **Query Interval** (In Seconds). To reset the values, select **Restore default values** checkbox.

After performing the necessary changes, click **Save**. The EMC Settings will be updated.





Web Console Settings

Web Console Settings submodule lets you configure web console Timeout, Dashboard, Login Page, SQL Server Connection, SQL Database compression and Password Policy Setting.

Web Console Settings		👔 Help
Web Console Timeout Setting		
Enable Timeout Setting		
Automatically log out the Web Console after	50 🗙 minutes	
DashBoard Setting		
Show Status for Last 7 days (1 - 365)		
Login Page Setting		
Show Client Setup Link		
Show Agent Setup Link		
Show eScan AV Report Link		
Logo Settings		
Logo :		
The logo needs to have the size 30	0 x 100px	
and needs to be in .png or .jpg (RG		
Change Default		
Sql Server Connection Setting		
Microsoft Windows Authentication Mode		
SQL Server Authentication Mode		
Server instance:		owse
Host Name/IP Address:	127.0.0.1	
Login name Password	sa Tes	st Connection
Password		st connection
SQL Database Purge Settings		
Enable Database Purge		
Database Size threshold in (MB)	1024 (500 - 7168)	
Purge data older than specified days, if above threshold is met	7 days (7 - 365)	
RMM Settings		
Activate View Only		
O De-Activate View Only		
Screen Quality	Medium 🗙	
Screen Ratio	80% 🗸	
Save Cancel		

Web Console Timeout Settings

To enable web console Timeout, select **Enable Timeout Setting** option. After selecting the checkbox, click the drop-down and select the preferred duration.





Dashboard Setting

This setting lets you set number of days for which you wish to View the Status, Statistics and Protection Status Charts in the Dashboard. Enter the preferred number of days.

Login Page Setting

This setting lets you show or hide the download links shared for eScan Client setup, Agent setup and AV Report. To show the download links on login page, select the checkboxes of respective links.

Logo Settings

This setting allows you to add the organization logo in PNG or JPEG format. So the console and reports will have the uploaded logo for customization.

To have the default eScan logo, click **Default**. To have customized logo, click **Change**.

SQL Server Connection settings

This setting lets you select an authentication mode between Microsoft Windows Authentication Mode to SQL Server Authentication Mode. Select the **SQL Server Authentication Mode** and define **Server instance** and **Host Name** along with the credentials for connecting to the database.

Server Instance

It displays the current server instance in use. To select another server instance, click **Browse**. Select an instance from the list and click **OK**.

Hostname/IP Address

It displays the Hostname or IP Address of the server instance computer.

Enter the credentials in **Username** and **Password** fields. To check whether correct credentials are entered, click **Test Connection**.

SQL Database Purge Settings

This setting lets you define the maximum SQL database size in MB and purge data older than the specified days. To enable SQL Database Purge Settings, select **Enable Database Purge** checkbox. Enter the preferred value in **Database Size threshold in (MB)** field.

Enter the preferred number of days in **Purge data older than specified days, if above threshold** is met field.

RMM Settings

This setting lets you configure default RMM setting for connecting to client via RMM service:

Activate View Only

By default, after taking a remote connection, you can only view the endpoint screen and are unable to perform any activity.

De-Activate View Only

To perform activity on an endpoint after taking remote connection, click **De-Activate View Only**.

Screen Quality Settings

This option lets you configure the screen as per your requirements. It consists following suboptions:

• Screen Quality can be set to Medium or High.





Screen Quailty	Screen Ratio
Medium 🔻	80% •
Medium	
High	

• Screen Ratio can be set to anywhere from 20% to 100%.

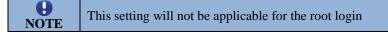
Screen Quailty	Screen Ratio
Medium	80% ▼ 100% 90% 80% 70% 60% 50% 40% 30% 20%

Image: Note that the second
After making the necessary changes, click **Save.** The web console Settings will be updated.

Password Policy Settings

This setting allows the admin to configure the password settings for other users.

- **Password Age**: Enter the preferred value (between 30-180); this will prompt user to reset the password after specified number of days. Here, 0 indicates that password never expires.
- **Password History**: Enter the preferred value (between 3-10); this maintains the password history for specified count. Here, 0 indicates, no password history is maintained.
- **Maximum Failed login attempts**: Enter the preferred value (between 3-10); this will restrict the user from logging after specified attempts. Here, 0 indicates unlimited login attempts.



To restore the changes made, click **Default**. After making the necessary changes, click **Save**. The web console Settings will be updated.





Update Settings

The Update Settings submodule keeps your virus definitions up-to-date and protects your computer from emerging species of viruses and other malicious programs. This submodule lets you configure update settings, update notifications and schedule updates according to your need.

You can configure eScan to download updates automatically either from eScan update servers or from the local network by using FTP or HTTP. You can configure following settings.

General Config

The **General Config** tab lets you configure update settings. The settings let you select the mode of update and configure proxy settings.

eneral Config Update I	Notification Scheduling	g Update Distribution		
elect Mode		• нттр		
oxy Settings				
-HTTP HTTP Proxy Server IP : Login Name :	192.000	Port: [Password : [3129	
-FTP FTP Proxy Server IP: Port:	1021	Logon Type User@siteaddress OPEN siteaddress		
Login Name : Password :	anonymous	PASV Mode Socks	4 🗸	

Select Mode

Select the mode for downloading updates. Following options are available:

- FTP
- HTTP

Proxy Settings

Proxy Settings lets you configure proxy for downloading updates.

To enable Proxy Settings, select **Download via Proxy** checkbox. You will be able to configure proxy settings depending on the mode of selection.

If you are using HTTP proxy servers, enter the HTTP proxy server IP address, port number and HTTP proxy server's authentication credentials.





If you are using FTP proxy servers, along with HTTP settings mentioned above you will have to enter FTP proxy server IP address, Port number, FTP proxy server's authentication credentials and Logon enter.

After filling the necessary data, click **Save > Update**. The General Config tab will be saved and updated.

Update Notification

The Update Notification tab lets you configure email address and SMTP settings for email notifications about database update.

eneral Config	pdate Notification Scheduling Update	Distribution
Update Notificatio	1	
Sender:	prishand com	
Recipient:		
SMTP Server:	192.	SMTP Port: 25
User name: Password :		
Test		

Update Notification

To receive email notifications from eScan about virus signature database update, select this option.

Sender

Enter an email ID for sender.

Recipient

Enter the recipient's email ID.

SMTP Server and Port

Enter the SMTP server's IP address and Port number in the respective fields.

Use SMTP Authentication

If the SMTP server requires authentication, select this checkbox and enter the login credentials in the **Username** and **Password** fields.

After filling the necessary data, click **Save > Update**. The Update Notification will be saved and updated.





Scheduling

The Scheduling tab lets you schedule updates with Automatic or Schedule Download mode.

Update Settings					👔 Help
General Config Updat	e Notification Sched	uling Update Dist	tribution		
Automatic Download					
Query Interval	120 💙 minute	5			
C Schedule Download					
Daily					
O Weekly	Mon	🗌 Tue	Wed	🗌 Thu	
	Fri	Sat	Sun		
O Monthly	1 V of the	month			
At	12:00 pm	9▼			
Save	Cancel Upda	ite			

Automatic Download

The eScan Scheduler sends a query to the update server at set intervals and downloads the latest updates if available. To set an interval, click the **Query Interval** drop-down and select a preferred duration.

Schedule Download

The eScan Scheduler lets you set a schedule the download for daily, weekly, or monthly basis at a specified time. The scheduled query will be sent to the update server as per your preferences.

After filling the necessary data, click **Save** > **Update**. The Scheduling tab will be saved and updated.





Update Distribution

The Update Distribution tab allows the admin to enable and disable the sharing of eScan Virus signature to be distributed to air-gapped/isolated network.

eneral Config 🔰 Update Notificatio	n Scheduling Update Distribution
- Setting	
Enable Share	Disable Share
Anti-spam/product Updates	
Anti-spam/product Updates :	C:\PUB\Update
AntiVirus Updates	
32 bit share path :	C:\PUB\AVX
Z Enable 64 bit update (Require	d only if 64 bit Linux and MAC system are in network)
64 bit share path :	C:\PUB\MAC\AVX
e: Sharing to be enabled only incase	e of eScan Virus Signature to be distributed to air-gapped network.
It is necessary to set the update	mode to Network in air-gapped eScan server through eScan Protection Center.
(Source UNC Path for Network m	ode to be set as \\ServerName\esupd or \\ServerIP\esupd)

Select **Enable Share** in **Setting** section, this will allow the distribution of eScan Virus Signatures to the isolated/air-gapped network. After enabling this, it is mandatory to set the update mode to the network in network that is isolated/air-gapped through eScan Protection Center.

To update it, follow the below steps:

1. Open the eScan Protection Center in air-gapped network; click **Update** option present in the Quick Link section.

G Update	
Configuration	
Last Database Updated	13 08:53
Run Mode	Automatic
Update Now Settings	
Reports	
View Log	





2. Click **Settings**.

Update Settings window appears.

Select Mo	ode	ing HTTP	Network	
Proxy Set	0	OHIP	Network	
HTTP	HTTP Proxy Server IP :		Port: 3	
FTP	Login Name :		Password :	
FIP	FTP Proxy Server IP:	F	Port: 1	
	Login Name: anonymous		 User@siteaddress OPEN siteaddress 	
	Password: ******		PASV Mode Socks	

3. Select Network option and set the Source UNC Path as \\ServerName\esupd or \\ServerIP\esupd.

E.g.: \\192.0.2.0\esupd

After setting UNC path for the air-gapped network, the update will be available automatically to the Isolated/Air-gapped network.





Auto-Grouping

The Auto grouping submodule consists following subsections:

- Auto Add Client setting
- Client(s) list excluded from Auto adding under Managed Group(s)
- Group and Client selection criteria for Auto adding under Managed Group(s)

Auto Grouping	🤤 Refresh 👔 Help
Auto Add Client setting	
Auto adding client(s) under Managed Group(s)	
Client(s) list excluded from Auto adding under Ma	naged Group(s)
Add	
SUPER PC	
e.g.: Host Name Host Name with wildcard IP Address IP Address Range Group and Client selection criteria for Auto adding	under Managed Group(s)
Group Name	Client Criteria
Add	Add Run Now
Remove Browse	A Remove
Up	
e.g.: group1 group1\subgroup	e.g.: Host Name Host Name with wildcard IP Address IP Address Range
Save	

Auto Add Client setting

Selecting the checkbox **Auto adding client(s) under Managed Group(s)** enables automatic adding computers under Managed group(s) after manual installation of eScan client.

Client(s) list excluded from Auto adding under Managed Group(s)

Adding a client in this list ensures that it does not auto add itself again after you remove it from the Managed computer(s).

Group and Client selection criteria for Auto adding under Managed Group(s)

This section lets you define/create groups with client criteria for auto adding under managed group(s). You can add a list of clients under a particular group name here and then add it under the exclusion list if required.





Excluding clients from auto adding under Managed Group(s)

To exclude clients from auto adding under managed group(s), follow the steps given below:

- 1. Enter either the host name, host name with wildcard, IP address or IP address range.
- 2. Click Add.

The computer will be displayed in the list below.

Removing clients from the excluded list

To remove the clients from the excluded list,

- 1. Select the computer you want to remove.
- 2. Click **Remove**.

The client computer will be removed from the list.

Group and Client selection criteria for Auto adding under Managed Group(s)

This feature can be used to automate the process of adding computers/clients under a particular group. This process is manually done under unmanaged computers.

Defining a group and client selection criteria for auto adding under managed computer(s)

To define group and client selection criteria for auto adding under managed groups(s), follow the steps given below:

Group and Client selection criteria for Auto adding under Managed Group(s)						
Group Name		Client Criteria				
	Add			Add	Run Now	
A	Remove		*	Remove		
	Browse					
	Up					
-	Down		-			
e.g.: group1		e.g.: Host Name				
group1\subgroup		Host Name with wildcard IP Address				
		IP Address Range				

1. Under the Group Name, enter the group's name and click Add.

OR

Click **Browse** and select the group from the existing list.

NOTE	To browse through the list of groups, click Up or Down .
-------------	--

2. Select the group for which you want to define the criteria.





- 3. Under the Client Criteria, enter either Hostname, Hostname with wildcard, IP address or IP address range and click **Add**. The clients displayed in the list will be added under the selected group.
- 4. Click Save.

The client will be saved under that group.

5. To apply the settings for the newly added client, click **Run Now**.



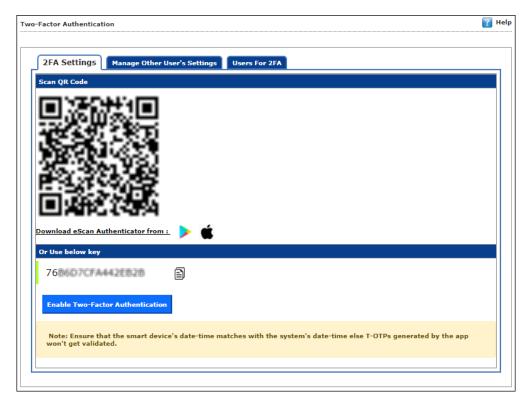


Two-Factor Authentication (2FA)

The system login password is Single-Factor Authentication which is considered unsecure as it may put your organization's data at high risk of compromise. The Two-Factor Authentication, also more commonly known as 2FA, adds an extra layer of protection to your eScan web console login.

The 2FA feature mandates you to enter a Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP) after entering eScan credentials. So, even if somebody knows your eScan credentials, the 2FA feature secures data against unauthorized logins. Only administrator can enable/disable the 2FA feature. It can also be enabled for added users as well.

To use 2FA login feature, you need to install the **Authenticator** app from <u>Play Store</u> for Android devices or from <u>App Store</u> for iOS devices. The Authenticator app needs camera access for scanning a QR code, so ensure you get an appropriate approval to use device camera in your organization. If a COD or BYOD policy restricts you from using device camera in your organization, enter the **Account Key** in the Authenticator app.



•	Ensure that the smart device's date and time matches with the system's date and time,
NOTE	else TOTPs generated by app won't get validated.

•	We recommend that you save/store the Account Key in offline storage or a
IMPORTANT	paperback copy, in case you lose the account access.





Enabling 2FA login

To enable 2FA login,

- 1. Go to Settings > Two-Factor Authentication.
- 2. Open the Authenticator app.

After basic configuration following screen appears on smart device.

\leftarrow		
	an account	
0	Scan a barcode	
	Enter a provided key	

3. Select a preferred option. If you tapped **Scan a barcode**, scan the onscreen QR code via your smart device. If you tapped **Enter a provided key**, enter the Account Key and then tap **ADD**. After scanning the Account QR code or entering Account Key the eScan server account gets added to the Authenticator app. The app then starts displaying a Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP) that is valid for 30 seconds.

13

4. Click **Enable Two-Factor Authentication**. Verify TOTP window appears.

	×
Two-Factor Authentication	
Verify T-OTP	
11:43:18 AM	
Enter T-OTP Verify T-OTP	





- 5. Enter the TOTP displayed on smart device and then click **Verify TOTP**. The 2FA login feature gets enabled.
- 6. To apply the login feature for specific users, click **Manage Other User Settings** tab. The tab displays list of added users and whether 2FA status is enabled or disabled.
 - 2FA Disabled
 2FA Enabled

	actor Authentication	👔 Help
	2FA Settings Manage Other User's Settings Users For	2FA
U	iser's name	<u>2FA Status</u>
k	4043)	
ro	pot	

7. To enable 2FA login for an added user, click the button to check icon.

The 2FA login for added users gets enabled. After enabling the 2FA login for users, whenever they log in to eScan web console Verify TOTP window appears.

Disabling 2FA login

To disable 2FA login,

- 1. Go to Settings > Two Factor Authentication.
- 2. Click Disable Two-Factor Authentication.







Verify TOTP window appears.

Two-Factor Authentication	
Verify T-OTP	
11:45:34 AM	
Enter T-OTP	
Verify T-OTP	
	J

3. Enter the **TOTP** and then click **Verify TOTP**. The 2FA feature gets disabled.



After disabling the 2FA feature and enabling it again, the 2FA login status will be reinstated for added users.

Users For 2FA

This tab helps to add the users and apply 2FA to the endpoints via policy template. The users can be added directly or from Active directory.

2FA Settings Ma	nage Other User's	Settings Users For 2FA	ן	
🛃 Add User 💽 Add	d from Active Director	Delete		
<u>User's name</u>	Description	Created Date	Assigned Policy Template	<u>QRCode</u>
aniliat	admin	7/2/2021 6:24:41 PM		View

Method 1: Adding user

To add users for the same, follow the below steps:

- 1. Go to Settings > Two-Factor Authentication > Users For 2FA.
- 2. Click Add User.

Add User window appears.

		🔛 🔛
Add User		
Username		
Description		
Ok	Cancel	





- 3. Enter the Username and Description.
- 4. Click **OK**. The user will be added for 2FA.

Method 2: Adding User from Active Directory

To add users from Active Directory, follow the below steps:

- 1. Go to Settings > Two-Factor Authentication > Users For 2FA.
- 2. Click Add from Active Directory.

Add Active Directory Users window appears.

Add Active Directory Users		김 Hel
Add Active Directory Users		
Search Criteria		
User's name*:		
	For Example: user or user*	
Domain*:		
AD IP Address*:		
AD Admin User name*:		
	For Active Directory account: domain\use	rname
AD Admin Password*:		
Use SSL Auth.:		
AdsPort*:	389]
Search		
Search Results		
Users	Selected Users	
	^	
	<	
MDM (
Role*: Administrator	~	
Ok Cancel		(*) Mandatory Field
		()

3. Enter the required information.

4. Click Ok.

The Active Directory Users will be added.





Administration

The Administration module lets you create User Accounts and allocate them Admin rights for using eScan Management Console. In a large organization, installing eScan client on all computers may consume lot of time and efforts. With this option, you can allocate rights to the other employees and allow them to install eScan Client, implement Policies and Tasks.

The Administration module consists following submodules:

- User Accounts
- User Roles
- Export & Import
- Customize Setup
- Audit Trail

User Accounts

For a large organization, installing eScan Client and monitoring activities may become a difficult task. With User Accounts submodule, you can create new user accounts and assign Administrator role to added users and reduce the workload. This submodule displays a list of users and their details like Domain, Role, Session Log and Status.

ser	Accounts					💲 Refresh	김 Help
Ð	Create New Accou	unt 💽 Add from Active Directory 🗎 Delete	1 -	-1 of 1 ∣∢ page	1 of 1 🕅	Rows per page:	10 🗸
	<u>User's name</u>	Full Name	Domain	<u>Role</u>	MDM Role	Session Log	<u>Status</u>
	root	Administrator account created during installation		Administrator	Administrator	View	V . 🗐
Ð	Create New Accou	unt Rdd from Active Directory	1	-1of1 ⊣ page	1 of 1 🕅	Rows per page:	10 🗸

Create New Account

To create a User Account,

1. In the User Accounts screen, click **Create New Account**. Create User form appears.

Create User		_[2] Help
User Accounts > Create User Account Type and Information		
User's name*:		
Full Name*:		
Password*:		
Confirm Password*:		
Email Address:*		
	For Example: user@yourcompany.com	
Account Role		
Role*: Administrator	v	
Save Cancel		(*) Mandatory Fields





- 2. From Account Role field, click drop-down and assign the role to the account.
- After filling all the details, click Save.
 The user will be added to the User Accounts list.

Delete a User Account

To delete a user account,

1. In the User Accounts screen, select the user you want to delete.

User	Accounts					💲 Refresh	👔 Help
	Create New Acro	ount 🗃 Add from Active Directory 👔 Delete		1 - 2 - 6 2 - 4 - 2 - 4	e 1 of 1 ≽∣ R(10 🗸
	<u>User's name</u>	Full Name	Domain	<u>Role</u>	MDM Role	Session Log	<u>Status</u>
	<u>k</u>	Kallilli		Administrator 🗸	Administrator 🗸	View	V •
	root	Administrator account created during installation		Administrator	Administrator	View	Ø
Ð	Create New Acco	ount 💽 Add from Active Directory 前 Delete		1 - 2 of 2 ⊣ pag	e 1 of 1 ⊨∣ Ro	ows per page: (10 🗸

2. Click **Delete**.

A confirmation prompt appears.

ser Accounts
Do you want to delete the selected user account(s) ?
Ok Cancel

3. Click OK.

The User Account will be deleted.





User Roles

The User Roles submodule lets you create a role and assign it to the User Accounts with variable permissions and rights as defined in the role being assigned to them. It can be an Administrator role with set of permissions and rights Group Admin Role or a Read only Role.

User Role		\$ Refresh	👔 Help
H New	tole Properties 🗇 Delete		
Role	Name Description		
Admi	istrator		

You can re-define the Properties of the created role for configuring access to various section of eScan Management Console and the networked Computers. It also lets you delete any existing role after the task is completed by them. It allows the administrator to give permission to sub administrators to access defined modules of eScan and perform installation/uninstallation of eScan Client on network computers or define policies and tasks for the computers allocated to them.

New Role

To add a user role,

 In the User Roles screen, click New Role. New Role form appears.

New Role			<table-cell> Help</table-cell>
User Roles >New Role			
Role Details			
New Role Name :*			
Description :			
Select Group :			
🗄 🗌 🧰 Managed Cor	nputers		
Ok		l	
Cancel			

- 2. Enter name and description for the role.
- 3. Click **Managed Computers** and select the specific group to assign the role. The added role will be able to manage and monitor only the selected group's activities.
- 4. Click OK.





Permissions section appears displaying Main Tree Menu and Client Tree Menu tabs. The Main Tree Menu consists of Navigation Panel Access permissions while the Client Tree Menu consists of selected groups on which permissions the user is allowed to take further.

Main Tree Menu Client Tree Menu					
Menu	View	Configure			
DashBoard					
Managed Computers		1			
Unmanaged Computers					
Network Computers					
IP Range					
Active Directory					
Report Templates					
Report Scheduler					
Events & Computers					
System Action List					
Tasks For Specific Computers					
Asset Management					
User Activity					
Print Activity					
Session Activity Report					
File Activity Report					
Application Access Report					
Patch Report					
Notifications					
Outbreak Alert					

- 5. Select the checkboxes that will allow the role to view/configure the module.
- 6. After selecting the necessary checkboxes, click **Save**. The role will be added to the User Roles list.

View Role Properties

To view the properties of a role,

- 1. In the User Roles screen, select a role.
- 2. This enables **Properties** and **Delete** buttons.

r Roles	🗢 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help
- New Role 💕 Properties 👔 Delete	
Role Name	Description
<u>Kole Name</u>	Description
Administrator	
Kallan	

3. Click Properties.

Properties screen appears. It lets you modify role description, permissions for accessing and configuring modules and assign the role to other groups by clicking **Select Group Tree**.



Menu	View	Configure
mend		
DashBoard		
Managed Computers		
Unmanaged Computers		
Network Computers		
IP Range		
Active Directory		
Report Templates		
Report Scheduler		
Events & Computers		
System Action List		
Tasks For Specific Computers		
Asset Management		
User Activity		
Print Activity		
Session Activity Report		
File Activity Report		
Application Access Report		

4. To modify client configuration permissions, click **Client Tree Menu**.

Client Tree Menu

Define the Actions that the created role can configure for the allocated group. The menu has Action List, Client Action List, Select Policy Template, Policy Criteria, and Group Tasks.

Permissions	nissions				
Main Tree Menu Client	Main Tree Menu Client Tree Menu				
Managed Computers	[Managed Computers/Samples_Team]	Configure			
🗄 🧮 Linux / Mac					
Ma fiatine. Taam	Action List				
	New Sub Group				
	Set Group Configuration				
	Deploy / Upgrade Client				
	Uninstall eScan Client				
	Remove Group				
	Synchronize with Active Directory				
	Outbreak Prevention				
	Create Client Setup				
	Properties				
	Client Action List				
	Set Host Configuration				
	Deploy / Upgrade Client				
	Uninstall eScan Client				
	Move to Group				
	Remove from Group				
	Refresh Client				
	Show Critical Events				
	Export				
	Show Installed Softwares				

5. To let the role configure these actions, under the Configure column select the checkboxes of corresponding actions.





6. Click Save.

The Role Properties will be updated accordingly.

Delete a User Role

To delete a user role,

1. In the User Roles screen, select the user role you want to delete.

	r Roles	💲 Refresh 🛛 👔 Help	
E New Role Properties Delete			
	Role Name	Description	
	Administrator		
	K		

2. Click **Delete**.

A delete confirmation prompt appears.

Ε	3
Delete Role	
Do you want to delete the selected Role(s)?	
Ok Cancel	

3. Click OK.

The User Role will be deleted.





Export & Import

The Export & Import submodule lets you to take a backup of your eScan server settings, in case you want to replace the existing eScan server. You can export the Settings, Policies and the Database from existing server to a local drive and import it to the new server.

Export Settings

This tab lets you export the eScan Server Settings, Policies, and Database. To export the eScan Server settings, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Export Import Settings screen, click **Export Settings** tab.

Import Settings		?
Export Settings	Import Settings Scheduling	
WMC Setting:	and Policies	
Database		
Export		
View Exported Fil	25	
Export files path:	C:\PROGRA~1\COMMON~1\microworld\apache2\EMCWebAdr Change Path	
1. Select required		

- 2. To backup **WMC Settings and Policies** and **Database**, select both the checkboxes. The backup file will be exported to the path shown in **Export files path** field. To change the file path, click **Change Path**. Enter the file path and click **Add**.
- 3. To view the exported files, click View Exported Files.
- 4. Click Export.

The backup file will be exported to the destination path.

A success message appears at the top displaying date, time, and a download link for the exported file.



Settings Exported Successfully <u>Download Exported File</u> (7/13/2021 12:25:40 PM) Note : Exported file can not be use on lower versions





Import Settings

This tab lets you import the eScan Server Settings, Policies, and Database. To import the eScan Server settings, follow the steps given below:

1. In the Export Import Settings screen, click Import Settings tab.

File Name	Choose File No file chosen	
🗹 WMC Set	tings and Policies	
Database	2	
Import		
View Exporte	d Files	

2. Click Choose File.

The Import Settings tab lets you import only Settings and Policies or Database.

- 3. To import WMC Settings and Policies and Database, select both the checkboxes.
- 4. To view the exported files, click View Exported Files.
- 5. Click Import.

The backup file will be imported.

A success message is displayed after complete import.



After successfully taking a backup, eScan asks you to restart the server.





Scheduling

This tab lets you schedule auto-backing up of Settings, Policies, and Database.

	and Policies		🗆 Dai	tabase
Daily				
Daily Weekly	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu
	Eri	Sat		
O Monthly	1 ¥			
🖲 At	12:00 pm	© T		
SMTP Server: SMTP Port:				
Use SMTP Au				
Use SMTP Au User name:				
User name:				
User name: Password: Test				
User name: Password: Test Z Enable Optiona			2 🗸	

To create a Schedule for export, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Select Enable Export Scheduler checkbox.
- 2. Select the checkboxes whether to back up both WMC Settings and Policies and Database.
- 3. Schedule the backup for a **Daily**, **Weekly** (Select a day) or **Monthly** (Select a date) basis.
- For the At field, click the drop-down and select a time for backing up data. If you want to receive email notifications about the procedure, select Enable Notifications Settings checkbox and fill in the necessary details.
- 5. If the SMTP server requires authentication, select the **Use SMTP Authentication** checkbox and enter the credentials.
- 6. To check if the SMTP settings are correct, click **Test**. A test email will be sent to recipient email ID.





- 7. To configure additional settings for backup file, select the **Enable Optional Settings**, and make the necessary changes.
- 8. To restore the changes made, click **Default**.
- 9. To view the exported files, click **View Exported Files**.
- 10. After performing all the necessary steps, click **Save**. The export schedule will be saved.





Customize Setup

This submodule lets you create a customized setup for a Client or an Agent with fewer modules and deploy it to various locations. This can be very useful, if there are locations to which a server is unable to push the setup or locations that are unable to connect to the server directly. The custom setup can be downloaded as a file and sent to different locations.

Create Customized Setup 💲 Refresh 👔								
Client \ Agent for Windows								
Setup Name	Group Path	Server IP	OS Type	Distribution	Description	Created On	Download	-

Creating a customized setup for Windows

To create a customized setup for Windows, follow the steps given below:

1. In Create Customized Setup screen, click **Client/Agent for Windows**. Customize New Setup screen appears.

Customize New Setup	👔 Help						
Customize Setup > Client \ Agent for Windows							
Setup File Settings							
Setup for*:	Client O Agent						
Description*:							
Group:	Browse						
Server IP*:	192.168 () 199. WIN-C. (1999)						
	Enable Advance Settings						
Advance Settings for Customized Setup Image: Set Password Image: Set Password <td< td=""><td></td></td<>							
Save Cancel	(*) Mandatory Fields						

- 2. Select whether the setup file is being created for **Client** or **Agent**.
- 3. Enter description for the setup file.
- 4. Click **Browse** and select a group for which this setup is being created.
- 5. Enter eScan Server IP address.
- 6. If you want to provide advanced settings with the setup, select the **Enable Advance Settings** checkbox. Doing so enables the bottom field. Select the setting checkboxes you want to provide.





7. Click Save.

The customized setup for Windows will be created.

Editing Setup Properties

The properties can be edited only for customized Windows setup. To edit the customized Windows setup's properties, follow the steps given below:

Clie	Client \ Agent for Windows 💕 Properties in Delete						
>	<u>Setup Name</u>	Group Path	Server IP				
>	Set	Ma st					

- 1. In the Create Customized Setup screen, select the Windows setup you want to edit.
- 2. Click **Properties**.

Edit Customized Setup screen appears.

Edit Customized Setup			<u>?</u> Help
$\underline{Customize \ Setup} > Client \setminus Agent \ for \ Windows$			
Setup File Settings			
Setup for*:	Client Agent		
Description*:	TSS_CUSTOM_SETUP		
Group:	Managed Computerer/Smugh	Browse	
Server IP*:	192.168 WIN-		
	Carable Advance Settings		
Advance Settings for Customized Setup E File AntiVirus E Remove Mail Antivirus E Remove AntiSpam E Remove AntiSpam E Remove Firewall E Remove Firewall E Remove Firewall E Remove Privacy Control E Enable Schedule Scan E Enable Cloud Scan E Client Installation Settings E Additional Settings E Schedule Download			
Save Cancel			(*) Mandatory Fields

3. Make the necessary changes and then click **Save**. The setup will be updated.





Deleting a Setup

To delete a setup, follow the steps given below:

Clie	Client \ Agent for Windows 💕 Properties 前 Delete						
>	Setup Name	Group Path	Server IP				
>	Set	Ma st					
	·	-					

- 1. In the Create Customized Setup screen, select the setup you want to delete.
- 2. Click **Delete**.

]
Create Customized Setup	
Do you really want to Delete?	
Ok Cancel	

4. Click Ok.

The setup will be deleted.





Audit Trail

The Audit Trail submodule let you record the security relevant data, operation, event, Action, policy updates. Audit logs are used to track the date, time and activity of each user, including the policy/criteria that have been changed. A record of the changes that have been made to a database. You can get audit trail of user activity across all these systems.

▲ Filter Criteria ▲ Export Options									
							1 - 4 of 4 ⊣∢ (pa	ge 1 of 1 → ⊨ Rov	rs per page: 50 🗸
<u>User Name</u>	Session Id	IP Address	Client Date	<u>Client Time</u>	Audit Type	Policy/Criteria Name	Module Name	Action	View Action
mail	[E5.40.1014.1"0.0004.36]	192.168	(m/m/21	12 38 38	Log Off			Console LogOut	
mail	[DC+0-2# ******538]	192.168	(18)(18)(21)	12 38 00	Login			Console LogIn	
mail	[6C()+10+30+7-0(0035]	192.168	(IB) (IB) 21	12 (42) (26)	Login			Console LogIn	
mail	[6C(*]###3/** 0(10)35]	192.168 (1.88)	(18/(18/21	12	Log Off			Console LogOut	

Filter all Audit Trail report

To filter the Audit Trail Report as per your requirements, click **Filter Criteria** field. Filter Criteria field expands.

	▲ Export Options	
* Include 💙	✓ IP Address	* Include 🗸
* v Include 💙	Policy/Criteria Name	* Include 🗸
* Include 🗸		
		(*) View All Items
	* v Include V	

Select the parameters you want to be included in the filtered report.

Include/Exclude

Selecting Include/Exclude for a parameter lets you include or exclude it from the report.

After making the necessary selections, click **Search.** The Audit Trail Report will be filtered according to your preferences.

Exporting Audit Trail

To export the Audit Trail Report, click **Export Option**. Export Option field expands.

▲ Filter Criteria		♥ Export Option	
Export Option			
	O PDF	HTML	Export

Select the preferred option and then click Export.

A success message appears.



Click the link to open/download the file.





License

The License module lets you manage user licenses. You can add, activate, and view the total number of licenses available for deployment, previously deployed, and licenses remaining with their corresponding values. The module also lets you move the licensed computers to non-licensed computers and vice versa. Here you can also view the number of add-on license along with the name of it. For example, as you can see here there are 15 add-on licenses for eBackup feature. The add-on license is available for RMM, 2FA, and DLP features.

License						💲 Refresh 👔 Help
Register Information						
License Key(30 char)	Activation Cod	l <u>e(60 char)</u>	Registration Status	Contract Period Ends on	No. of Users	Add On License
VACI: BIOD OWIN EICO BOOD-	coorto-veed-	\$K\$WN-39869-\$1632-16(89-	Activated	05-Sep-2021	10	RMM+ DLP+2FA+ Anti-Theft
AZIB-WORB-QB	10079-07-010-0	543151E-1414/L.P.EL	Activated	00 Dep 2021		
To Add License <u>Click Here</u>						
		Lic	ense			
			30.0%			
		70.0%				
		License In Use - 3	8 🛛 🔴 Remaining Lice	nse - 7		
			[M	anage License]		

Adding and Activating a License

To add and activate a license,

1. In the License screen, click on **Click Here** link.



Add License Key dialog box appears.

Add 30 Character License Key.
OK Cancel

- 2. Enter the license key and then click **OK**.
 - The license key will be added and displayed in the **Register Information** table.
- 3. To activate the added license, click Activate Now.
- 4. Click **Activate now** link displayed in Activation Code column to activate the license key on eScan server system.

Online Registration Information form appears.





Online Registration Information			Privacy Policy 🤤	Refresh	👔 Help
License > Online Registration Information					
License Key : APCK #PDQ ORBIN ENLQ BQCQ AZUR WORB QB					
O I have Activation Code					
Enter Activation Code					
Activate Now					
Personal Information					
Name: Anilian musellan	Company Name:	MiserrailWiterFid			
Country: India 🗸	Email Id:	attillatie gamenates com			
State: Maharashtra	Customer Mobile No. *:	8444823232			
Note: Enter valid email id in order to receive backup copy of your license	e details.				
Email Subscription					
Yes	O No				
Dealer Mobile No.: 8					
Activate Cancel				(*)Mandat	ory Field

- 5. Select a desired option for activation.
- 6. Enter details in **Personal Information** section.

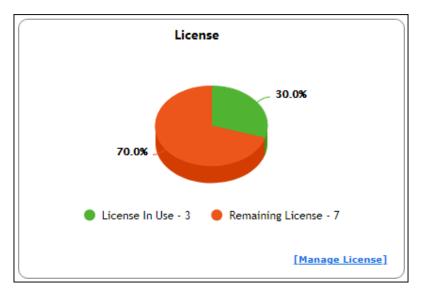
P Enter valid email id in order to receive backup copy of your license details.

- 7. Select a desired option for Email Subscription.
- 8. Enter the Dealer Mobile Number.
- 9. Click Activate. (Ensure that the Internet connection is Active.)

Moving Licensed Computers to Non-Licensed Computers

To move licensed computers to non-licensed computers,

1. In the License statistics box, click Manage License.







Manage License window appears.

Licensed Computers / Devices (3)	Filter License All	Move to Non-Licens
Licensed computers / Devices (3)		nove to non cicens
Machine Name	Group	
🗆 📃 uaumiji	Managed Computers'	
	Managed Computers	
	Managed Computers	
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)	Filter License All	前 Move to Licens
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)		Move to Licens
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)	Filter License All	Move to License
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)		Move to Licens
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)		Move to Licens
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)		Move to Licens
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)		Move to Licens
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)		Move to Licens

2. Under the **Licensed Computers** section, select the computer(s) that you want to move to Non-Licensed Computers section.

3. Click Move to Non-License.

The selected computer(s) will be moved to Non-Licensed computers section.

Manage License			🝸 Help
Licensed Computers / Devices	(2) Filter Licer	nse All 🗸	🚡 Move to Non-License
Machine Name		Group	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		Managed Computers	
WINACCERCOTTIN		Managed Computers	
			*
Non-Licensed Computers / Dev	vices (1) Fil	er License 🛛 All 🗸	🚡 Move to License
Machine Name	Group	<u>Unlicense Date Time</u>	Description
	Managed Computers	05/08/2021 16:43:00	
Close			

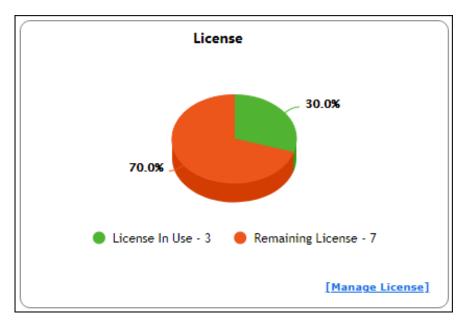




Moving Non-Licensed Computers to Licensed Computers

To move licensed computers to non-licensed computers, follow the steps given below:

1. In the License statistics box, click Manage License.



Manage License window appears.

ice	nsed Computers / De	vices (2)	Filter Lice	ense All 🗸	Move to Non-License
	Machine Name			Group	
	Literature -			Managed Computers	
	WINC CONTRACTOR	e.		Managed Computers	
lon	-Licensed Computers	/ Devices (1)	Fi	ilter License All	i Move to License
Non	-Licensed Computers Machine Name	/ Devices (1)	Fi	ilter License All V	Move to Licens
lon]					
łon	Machine Name	Group		Unlicense Date Time	
lon	Machine Name	Group		Unlicense Date Time	
lon	Machine Name	Group		Unlicense Date Time	
Non	Machine Name	Group		Unlicense Date Time	

2. Under the **Non-Licensed Computers** section, select the computer(s) that you want to move to Licensed Computers section.





3. Click Move to License.

The selected computer(s) will be moved to Licensed Computers section.

Manage License	👔 Help
Licensed Computers / Devices (3) Filte	r License All
Machine Name	Group
🗆 📃 uaunitu	Managed Computers'
	Managed Computers
WIN-CONSICTIONS	Managed Computers
Non-Licensed Computers / Devices (0)	Filter License All
N	o Record Found
	*
Close	





Getting Started

The following sections will be give you the detailed description and configuration procedure of all the eScan GUI and Modules presents in the eScan Elite for Business.

Graphical User Interface (GUI)

eScan 22 is not only equipped with the latest innovative technology but also has very simple yet trendy GUI. It is packed modules that gives brief details about the file scanned, quarantined, infected, and many more. It displays the date on which the computer was last scanned and virus signature updated.

eScan displays the real-time status of the computer (secured or not secured) along with additional options buttons and quick access links.







Data Encryption

The Data Encryption module lets you protect sensitive and confidential data from unauthorized access and data leak. With this module, the user can create a Vault that stores data in encrypted format. The Vault is encrypted using 256-bit Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) and HMAC-SHA 256-bit key. A password is required to access the vault. After you access the vault, the data stored will be automatically decrypted. Vice versa, after you close the vault, the data stored will be automatically encrypted.

How to Create a Vault?

To create a vault, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Launch eScan.
- 2. Click **Data Encryption**. Data Vault window appears.
- 3. Click **Create new Data Vault**.

Data Encryption		? - ×
	Keep important documents in a Data Vault. To secure your important data, you can use Data Encryption so that access to your data is protected by a password. Create a virtual disk t access, store, and work with files via file explorers much like you woul with regular disks. Create new Data Vault Laiready have a Data Vault	
		Close





4. To add files or folders in Data Vault, click **Add folders to Data Vault** or **Add files to Data Vault**. You can add files and folders by drag files and folders to vault.

Data Encryption	? - ×
Adding files and folders to the Data Vault. Add files and folders and click Next.	+Add folders to Data Vault +Add files to Data Vault
Back	Next Close

- 5. After adding required files and folder, click **Next**.
- 6. Configure the Data Vault:
 - Name of Data Vault: Enter a name for the vault.
 - Location of Data Vault: To select a custom location for Data Vault, click Browse. The default path for vault is c:\eScanVault.
 - Select a size for Data Vault, **Variable size** or **Fixed size**. If selected **Fixed size** enter the size in below field or use the arrow buttons to specify size.
 - Optionally, select the checkbox Create desktop shortcut for Data Vault.





	ting
Name of Dat	a Yault:
Data Vault	
Location of [
C:\eScanVault	Browse
⊙ ¥ariable s ○ Fixed size	 ize 1 Storage will increase and decrease the size automatically to fit all containing directories and files. Storage will be created with specified size and can't be increased or decreased in the future.
	Storage will be created with specified size and can't be increased or decreased in the future.
Fixed size	Storage will be created with specified size and can't be increased or decreased in the future.

- 7. After filling all the details, click **Next**.
- 8. Read the **Password Hint** and then enter the password.

Data	Encryption	?-×
G Pas	sword setting	
	Data Vault	
	Password to access the Data Vault:	
	••••••	
	Confirm Password	
	•••••••	
	Password Hint:	
	Minimum 8 characters.	
	Atleast 1 upper case letter (A-Z)	
	Atlease 1 lower case letter (a-z)	
	Atleast 1 special character (eg: !,#,%=*,@,&)	
	Atleast 1 number (0-9)	
	Password must match!	

9. Click **Next**.





10. Data will be copied to the Data Vault. If you wish to delete the original files and folders outside the data vault by clicking **Delete** or else click **Skip**.

Data Encryption		?-×
	Delete original files and folder outside the Data Vault? Files outside the Data Vault are accessible without password. C:\Users but allowing performing outside the main of the second s	
	Back Skip	Delete

11. Click Finish.

12. Data Encryption window appears, click **Done**.



13. The Data Vault will be created and get displayed on the data encryption list. To encrypt your data, click **Lock**.





Data Encryption	?	- ×
Open the Data Yault to access your files.		
Data Vault is unlocked C:VeScanVault	Open in Windows Explorer Lock	
I already have a Data Vault	Create new Data Vault Close	

14. Click Close.

The created Data Vault will be encrypted.

After the data vault is locked, you will get **More** button displayed the right-hand side of the screen. Through this option, you will get the following setting to configure the data vault:

ľ	Rename
	Show location of Data Vault
2	Create desktop shortcut
Ŕ	Delete
۵	Change Password
3	Recover Vault Password

Rename

You can rename the existing data vault. After clicking on this option, Rename window appears, change the name and click **Save**.

Show location of Data Vault

This option will open the location where data vault is created.

Create desktop shortcut

This option will create shortcut for the created vault for accessing it easily.

Delete

You can delete the existing data vault. Click on this option, the screen will prompting for password.





Data Encryption	le l	?•
G Delete Data Vau	It	
	Data Vault Password to access the Data Vault:	
	All files in the Data Vault will be deleted permanently. Delete Data Vault Back Back Back	

After entering the password, click **Delete Data Vault**.

This will delete the selected data vault.

Change Password

This option allows you to change the password set for the data vault. Click this option; you will be forwarded to the Data Encryption window.

📀 Change Passv	vord
9 0	Old Password
	New Password
	Confirm New Password
	Confirm New Password Back

Enter the **Old Password**, **New Password**, and **Confirm New Password**. Click **Save**.

This will change the password of the data vault.





Recover Password

This option is used to recover password, this will generate the password in an encrypted format.

Vault Password Recovery	×
Encrypted Password:	
Note: To recover password, email the above encrypted string to support@escanav.com along with the License detail and mention Subject line as "evault password recovery".	
ОК	







Two-Factor Authentication

The system login password is Single-Factor Authentication which is considered unsecure as it may put your system's data at high risk of compromise. The Two-Factor Authentication, also more commonly known as 2FA, adds an extra layer of protection to your computer.

The 2FA feature mandates you to enter a Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP) after entering Windows login credentials. So, even if somebody knows your login credentials, the 2FA feature secures data against unauthorized logins.

You can use various options to set password for the 2FA. You can set password or you can use the eScan administrator password in case the system is offline (without internet access). To use 2FA online authentication, you need to install the Authenticator app for Android devices from <u>Play Store</u> or for iOS devices from <u>App Store</u> on your smart device. The Authenticator app needs camera access for scanning a QR code in the Authenticator app.



Ensure that the smart device's date and time matches with the system's date and time or else TOTPs generated by app won't get validated.

Enabling 2FA login

To enable 2FA login, follow the below steps:

- 1. Open eScan Protection Center,
 - From desktop, double-click the \clubsuit icon.
 - From taskbar, right-click the 💔 icon and click **Open eScan Protection Center**.







2. Click **Two-Factor Authentication**.

Two-Factor Authentication		?
		<u>QR Code for TF</u>
Enable Two-Factor Authentication		
RDP SafeMode	User Logon	Unlock
Use eScan Administrator Password		
Use Other Password		
Use Online Two-Factor Authentication		

3. Select Enable Two-Factor Authentication. This will enable the other configuration settings.

Two-Factor Authentication		?×
		<u>QR Code for TFA</u>
Enable Two-Factor Authentication		
RDP SafeMode	User Logon	Unlock
Use eScan Administrator Password		
Use Other Password		
Use Online Two-Factor Authentication		
	<u>S</u> ave	<u>C</u> lose

P NOTE

Unlock option will be enabled only after selecting User Logon option.

4. You can configure it according to your requirement and click **Save**. The 2FA will work according to the configuration.





Login Scenarios

The 2FA feature can be used for following all login scenarios:

RDP

RDP stands for Remote Desktop Protocol. Whenever someone takes remote control of your system, the personnel will have to enter system login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

Safe Mode

After a system is booted in Safe Mode, the personnel will have to enter system login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

User Logon

Whenever a system is powered on or restarted, the personnel will have to enter system login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

Unlock

Whenever a system is locked, the personnel will have to enter login credentials and 2FA passcode to access the system.

Password Types

You can use following password types to log in:

Use eScan Administrator Password

You can use the existing eScan Administrator password for 2FA login.

Use Other Password

You can set a new password which can be combination of uppercase, lowercase, numbers, and special characters.

Use Online Two-Factor Authentication

To use Online 2FA authentication, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Install the Authenticator app from Play Store for Android devices or App Store for iOS devices.
- 2. Open the Authenticator app and tap **Scan a barcode**.

÷		•
	an add an account selecting one of the following options:	
0	Scan a barcode	
	Enter a provided key	

3. Now, open eScan Protection Center on your system and click Two-Factor Authentication.





4. Select Enable Two-Factor Authentication.

Two-Factor Authentication		?×
		QR Code for TFA
Enable Two-Factor Authentication		
RDP SafeMode	User Logon	Unlock
Use eScan Administrator Password		
Use Other Password		
Use Online Two-Factor Authentication		
(
	<u>S</u> ave	e <u>C</u> lose

- 5. Configure the login scenarios according to your need and select Use Online Two-Factor Authentication.
- 6. On the top right corner, click **QR code for TFA**. A QR code appears.



7. Scan the onscreen QR code via the Authenticator app.





A Time-based One-Time Password (TOTP) appears on smart device.

Authenticator	:
Account Added	
536151	13

 You can use this TOTP for login. This TOTP will get updated after every 30 seconds.

Disabling 2FA login

To disable the 2FA login, follow the below steps:

- 1. Open eScan Protection Center > Two-Factor Authentication.
- 2. Uncheck the Enable Two-Factor Authentication option.
- 3. Click Save.

The 2FA feature gets disabled.





Identity protection

Identity protection is the deliberate use of someone else's identity, usually as a method to gain a financial advantage or obtain credit and other benefits in the other person's name, and perhaps to the other person's disadvantage or loss. The person whose identity has been assumed may suffer adverse consequences, especially if they are held responsible for the perpetrator's actions. Identity theft occurs when someone uses another's personally identifying information, like their name, identifying number, or credit card number, without their permission, to commit fraud or other crimes.

eScan elite for Business (22.)				? –×
			mputer scan - N signatures - 17 N	
Mail Anti-Virus Anti-Spam Web Protection	Firewall Endpoint Security	Privacy Control	Identity Prote	ection
Identity Protection				
Configuration Identity Protection Status		Not Configured		Ċ.
<u>Start Settings</u> Reports				
Total Objects Blocked		0 Objects		X
<u>View Report</u>			a	
				ALL Y
🤄 🔇 Scan 🧔 Update	Rescue Mode eScan Remote Suppor	t Password Licens	se Information	Tools Reports

This module provides you with options required to configure the module. You can configure the settings from the following sections.





Configuration

This section displays the following information:

- Identity protection Status: It displays whether Identity protection is configured or not.
- **Start/Stop**: Click on this option to enable or disable identity protection module.
- **Settings**: This option gives you Identity Protection popup window. Under this we have two sections.

Identity Protection		?×
This feature lets you protect sensitive data of numbers, phone numbers, social security no pages, email messages and instant messag	umbers etc. from being sent over to the inter	s, credit card net through web
Privacy Information to protect		_
Category	What to Protect	Add
		Modify
		widdiry
		Remove
List of trusted websites	1	1
Address		Add
		Modify
		Remove
		Cancel

This section lets you protect sensitive data or information such as your account numbers, credit card numbers, phone numbers, and more from being sent over the internet through web pages, email messages, and instant messaging without your knowledge.

• **Privacy Information to protect:** From the **Privacy Information to protect** section click on **Add**. This Button helps you add domain category, and a textbox to add data that needs to be protected.

Add New Category	?×
Category Enter data to protect	
	OK Cancel





Once domains are added in the list you can modify them by clicking on the **Modify** button.

• **List of trusted websites**: Under **List of trusted websites** click the **Add** button to add the name of trusted website address.

Add New Trusted WebSite	?×
Trusted Website	
	OK Cancel

Once websites are added in the list you can modify them by clicking on the **Modify** button.

Reports

It displays following count along with the report:

Total Objects Blocked

This option gives you the total number of objects blocked by the eScan Identity Protection module.

View Report

To view reports, click View Report.





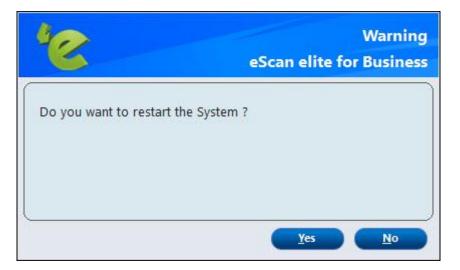
Quick Access Links

On lower-right corner of the screen, you can view the following quick access links:

Rescue Mode | eScan Remote Support | Password | License Information | Tools | Reports

Rescue Mode

Rescue Mode is an eScan feature that enables you to scan and disinfect all existing partitions on your hard drive inside and outside your operating system. Some sophisticated malware, like rootkits, need to be removed before Windows starts. Once eScan detects a threat that cannot be removed, it prompts you to reboot the computer in Rescue Mode for clean-up and restoration.



It allows you to boot into a secure environment during system startup without using any optical media. It uses Windows as well as Linux -based environment that not only helps you to scan and clean the system but also allows you to fix registry changes made by viruses and rootkits.





eScan Remote Support

eScan Remote Support is the option to get remote help from our Support Center; the Technical Support Executive will take control of your system for resolving the reported issue. It requires an active internet connection.

Steps for availing remote support:

1. Click on **eScan Remote Support** link at the bottom of the interface. Remote Support Disclaimer window will be opened.

5	Remote Support Disclaimer	
	Please read the following Remote Support Disclaimer. You must accept the terms of the disclaimer before using this tool.	
	eScan Remote Access Support Disclaimer Before you choose the "Accept" button at the botton of this window, carefully read the Warranty Disclaimer below. By choosing the "Accept" button you are (1) representing that you are over the age of 18 and have the capacity and authority to bind yourself and your employer, as applicable, to the terms of the disclaimer below; and (2) consenting on behalf of yourself and/or as an authorized representative of your employer, as applicable, to be bound by this disclaimer. If you do not agree to all of the terms and conditions of the disclaimer, or do not represent the foregoing, you will not and may not receive Remote Access Support from eScan.	
	You have requested the assistance of an eScan Technical Support Representative through a remote connection to your computer ("Remote Access Support"). eScan is providing this Remote Access Support to you as a courtesy. You understand that by requesting Remote Access Support, you will be providing eScan Technical Support Personnel with access to and control of your computer. In addition, you may be providing eScan Technical Support Personnel with access to files that reside on your computer.	
	I accept the disclaimer ○ I do not accept the disclaimer Copyright (c) MicroWorld	
	Ok	

- 2. Read and accept the disclaimer and click **Ok**. eScan Remote Support tool will open.
- 3. It will generate a user ID and password. Send this user id and password to the technical support executive.

The executive will take remote support of your system.





Password

Password will secure your system from making any unauthorized changes to the settings and configurations defined by you.

Using Password Protection for opening eScan

You can define a password for accessing eScan. Use the following steps for defining a password:

- 1. Open eScan Window.
- 2. Click **Password** link at the bottom of the interface.
- 3. Type a Password in the **Enter New Password** field. It is recommended to enter alphanumeric password.
- 4. Re-enter the Password in **Confirm New Password** field and click **OK**. You will have to enter this password to change any settings and also to open eScan.

Change Administrator Password	? ×
Enter Old Password	_
Enter New Password	
Confirm New Password	_
<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	

For removing the password, Click the password link and Enter old **Password**, leave **Enter New Password** and **Confirm New Password** fields as blank. Now click **OK**. The defined password will be removed and you will not be prompted to enter password to open eScan.





License Information

Click License Information link present in Quick access links at the bottom of eScan Protection Center. You will be forwarded to License information window, it displays following important information.

			?->
S		License	Information
License Key (30 char)	Activation Code (60 char)	Registration Status	Contract Per
COLD BUT ROUTE AUDI-	with the rest of the test of the	Activated	06-Mar-2022
•			Þ
Contract Period Ends on	06-Mar-2022		
Add License Key	Activate Now Rene	w	ОК

- License Key: Displays the License Key of the product.
- Activation Code: Displays the Activation Code of the product.
- **Registration Status**: Displays the registration status of the product namely, Active, Trail, or Expired.
- Contract Period Ends on: Displays the expiry date of the product activation.
- Version: Displays the version number of the antivirus software.





Additionally, it also allows you to perform following actions on right click.

		License In	formatio
License Key (30 char)	Activation Code (60 char)	Registration Status	Contract Pe
erent mitte hönne fotter i	<u>A</u> dd License Key A <u>c</u> tivate Now	Activate before 05-Apr-2	-
	Renew License		
	Delete License Key		
	Сору		
•			Þ
irace Period ends on 05	5-Apr-2021		

- Add License Key: Click on this button to add license key.
- Activate Now: Click on this button to activate the license key.
- **Renew License**: Click on this button to renew the license key.
- Delete License Key: Click on this button to delete the added license key.
- **Copy**: This option will copy license key.





Tools

The Tools link provides you with the options for easy and quick access to various tools for eScan and each tool will have its own functions.

eScan eli	te for Business (22.				?-×
				ast computer scan - virus signatures - 17	
File A	Anti-Virus Mail Anti-Virus Anti-Sp	am Web Protection	Firewall Endpoint Se	ecurity Privacy	Control
×	Tools				
	eScan USB Stick Creation	Dov	vnload eScan Service pac	k	10
1	Restore Windows Default Settings	Upl	oad Samples		10
1	Windows Essential Updates	VSE USE	3 Vaccination		1
	Registry Cleaner	Vul	nerability Scanner		
-					
				<u> 1960 - 1960 - 1960</u>	
501 c					
ia, Scan 🧔	Jupdate	Rescue Mode eScan Rer	note Support Password	License Information	Tools Reports

It gives you access to the various eScan Elite for Business tools and it performs the following actions.

eScan USB Stick Creation

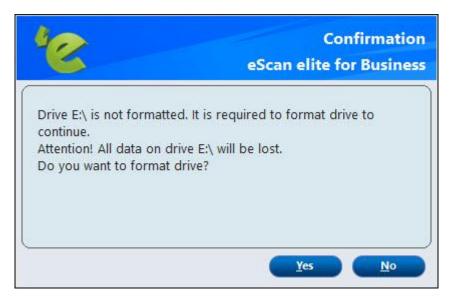
You will have to burn the image on to a USB device before using it to repair/clean infected or damaged systems. You can connect your USB to the device and select the device from the drop-down menu.





Recording data to USB flash drive	
The wizard will record data to a USB flash driv	e
Select the USB flash drive:	
3]
Warning : Please use only USB flash drives or l ISO image. Do not use mp3-players, smart pho	
Note: Booting from a USB drive depends upor it may fail in some scenario.	n additional BIOS configuration, hence

After selecting the device, click **Next>**. It will prompt you to format the USB drive.



Click Yes.

The process of recording the data in the USB will be initialized and you will get the following screen:





K	eScan USB Stick Creation
Recording data to USB flash drive	
The wizard is recording to a USB	flash drive. It can take a few minutes
(a	

Once the recording process is completed, you will get the following screen. Click Next>.

0	eScan USB Stick Creation
Recording data to USB flash drive	
Process completed successfully, Press next to c	ontinue.
	< Back Next > Cancel

Completing the Rescue USB stick Creation Wizard appears. Click **Finish**.







The Rescue USB stick will be created successfully.





Download eScan service pack

You can download the latest eScan service pack directly from here. This will include all the latest updates.

Restore Windows Default Settings

You can restore the Windows® operating system settings, such as desktop and background settings, to eliminate all the modifications made by a virus attack by using this button. eScan automatically scans your computer for viruses when you click this button and sets the system variables to their default values.

2	Virus scan	? - ×
	MWAV - eScanAV AntiVirus Toolkit	
Summa Total Nun Total Nun Total Nun Total Nun Total Nun Total Nun Total Nun	eSoan www.escanav.com convrint MicroWorld	
	Set To Lo <u>w</u> Priority Ca <u>n</u> cel <u>P</u> ause	View l <u>o</u> g





Upload Samples

This functionality will allow you upload the suspicious files that will be checked by eScan's R&D team. You can click on this link, it will be redirect to our website, where you can upload the sample and post your queries.

<u>File Edit View History B</u> ookmarks <u>T</u> ool	ls <u>H</u> elp						₋₽
'@ Select a department - Powere × +							
(i) 🔏 support.mwti.net/support/index.;	php?/Tickets/Submit			C' 🔍 Search	☆ 🖻	↓ 俞	
						,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
eS €anĭ							
💮 Home 🛛 🖉 Submit a Tio	cket 🕴 eScan Wiki 🚽	eScan FAQs				Englis	h (U.S.) 🔽
Login Your email address	Rease type your sea	rch query here				SEA	RCH
Remember me	Select a department						
Lost password Login	If you can't find a solution to	your problem in our knowledgeb	base, you can submit a tick	et by selecting the appropriate	department below.		
	Departments						
Live Support	O Support						
- ONLINE	 Samples 						
Live Chat Software by Kayako	Registration						
	 Europe Support 						
	False Positive						
	Next »						





Windows Essential Updates

It will update your system with the latest windows patch updates. eScan maintains a list of critical Windows Update patches on every computer that are available for free, whenever the user clicks on **Download Latest Hotfix (Microsoft Windows OS)** option, it checks the computer for missing patches on the OS by matching the installed patches with the released patch list in the database. The missing critical Windows update patches are then downloaded and installed on the computer where eScan is running. The database list is categorized on the basis of the operating system.

🐺 MicroWorld Download Manag	er (4.0.0.122)	
A DIGITAL WORLD	KB2807986 on Win7: Present KB2808735 on Win7: Present KB2813170 on Win7: Present ** Adding link for KB4012212 on Win7 KB382132 on Win7: Present -2021-03-01 10:53:46 http://download.windowsupdat Connecting to 192.168.0.10:3127 Connected. Proxy request sent, awaiting response 200 0K Length: 19729107 (19M) [application/octet-stream] Saving to: `C:/Program Files/Common Files/MicroWorld/	
	0K 0% 904K 21s 50K 0% 7.28M 12s 100K 0% 1.47M 12s 150K 1% 1.03M 14s 200K 1% 5.34M 12s 250K 1% 947K 13s 300K 1% 12.3M 11s 350K 1% 12.3M 11s	s 2s 2s 1s
	Select tools to download	Action
		Start Download
eSoan	Options V Execute after download	Stop Download
www.escanav.com Copyright MicroWorld	Ise IE Proxy	Exit





USB Vaccination

The USB devices are used for various purposes, but while using them you may not be aware that the system to which you are connecting is virus infected. When connected to such machines the USB devices also tend to get infected. So, to prevent such cases, eScan has introduced a feature wherein you can vaccinate USB device, whenever needed. Once vaccinated it stays protected even if you connect the flash drive to an infected system, it doesn't become a carrier to infection.

By default, the **Choose a USB Drive** drop-down list and **Vaccinate** button appears dimmed. It is available only when you connect any USB device to your system.

To vaccinate, select an appropriate USB drive, which you want to vaccinate from the **Choose a USB Drive** drop-down list, and click the **Vaccinate** button.

USB Vaccination	×
USB Vaccination prevents viruses from infecting your USB Drives. You can undo the vaccination later if needed. Choose a USB Drive Image: Choose a USB Drive	
Close	





Registry Cleaner

eScan will scan for issues in the selected registry entries, all issues found will be displayed in the Panel on the right. You can select / unselect the issues found by eScan and fix selected issues button to fix the issues. eScan will fix the selected issues instantly.

Registry Cleaner	Data	Registry key	Descripti
 CLSIDs Type Libraries CLSID Reference Shell Shortcuts File Extension Shortcut Module Usage User Trusted External Apps SharedDlls Windows Installer File Extension Reference App Management ARPCache MUI Cache Firewall Authorised Apps Firewall Authorised Apps Mosing TypeLib Reference Missing TypeLib Reference Invalid Default Icons 			
	•		





Vulnerability Scanner

This option will check the vulnerability of the software installed on your computer for any kind of weakness that can be used by the attacker to gain access to the information stored on your computer without your permission. Using the options present in Vulnerability Scanner module of eScan, you can easily update the listed software's with the more secured version of the same.

Vulnerability Scanner					
Program Name	Installed version	Secure Version		Status	Company Name
UULNERABLE					3
Notepad++ : a free (GNU) source code editor	7.7.1.0	7.8.3.0	0	Click to update	Don HO don.h@
WinRAR archiver	5.61.1.0	5.80.0.0	0	Click to update	Alexander Rosha
Wireshark	2.2.8.0	3.2.1.0	0	Click to update	The Wireshark de
🖃 LATEST					1
Firefox	85.0.2.7709	72.0.2.0	0	Up-to-date	Mozilla Corporat
				Scan Aga	ain Close





Reports

eScan generate reports for File Anti-Virus, Mail Anti-Virus, Anti-Spam, Web Protection, Firewall, Endpoint Security, Identity Protection, and eScan Cloud modules. Click **Reports** link present in Quick access links at the bottom of eScan Protection Center. You will be forwarded to Advance Report window; it displays the report for all the modules of eScan Elite for Business.

Advanced Report					?8	
Report						
File Anti-Virus Virus Report Proactive Scan Report Blocked File Report	From: 05-Aug-2021 V To: 05-Aug-2021 V Filter by: Generate Report					
Update Report Status Report Nai Anti-Virus Anti-Spam Urber Protection Endpoint Security	Date/Time	User	Name	Description	Action	
)	
				R	efresh Close	

- eScan generates reports of all its modules; you can View/Generate a report of any module through Reports link present in every module.
- eScan maintains a log of all the recent activities; it includes the date and timestamp, the user details, description and the action taken.





• It will also allow you to export the particular report as per your requirement or all the existing reports in PDF/ HTML/CSV format; it will also allow you to choose the path to save these reports on to your computer.

Export Report		×
Report Image: Second		
Adobe PDF HTML Select Directory:	CSV	Results
C:\PROGRA~1\eScan\Debug\	Export	Close

Procedure to export the report files

- 1. Select the particular files that you want to export or select the checkbox next to **All** option to select all the report.
- 2. Select the particular format of the file that you want to export; you can select from PDF/HTML/CSV file formats.
- 3. Click **Browse** and select the path where the file has to be saved.
- 4. Click **Export** to export the report files, or click **Close** to exit the window.





Contact Us

We offer 24/7 free online technical support to our customers through email and live chat. We also provide free telephonic support to customers during our business hours.

Before you contact technical support team, ensure that your system meets all the requirements and you have Administrator access to it. Also, ensure that a qualified person is available at the system in case it becomes necessary to replicate the error/situation.

Ensure that you have the following information when you contact technical support:

- Endpoint hardware specifications
- Product version in use and patch level
- Network topology and NIC information
- Gateway, IP address and router details
- List of hardware, software and network changes if any carried out
- Step-by-step description of error/situation
- Step-by-step description of troubleshooting if any attempted
- Screenshots, error messages and log/debug files

In case you want the Technical Support team to take a remote connection:

• IP address and login credentials of the system

Forums

Join the **Forum** to discuss eScan related problems with experts.

Chat Support

The eScan Technical Support team is available round the clock to assist you with your queries via **Live Chat**.

Email Support

If you have any queries, suggestions and comments regarding our products or this User Guide, write to us at **support@escanav.com**